

LET YOURSELF BE INSTRUCTED BY JESUS CHRIST HIMSELF

Very few people know that from 1851 to 1864 Jesus gave a much more complete story of the events that happened during His last 3 years before His crucifixion. A much more complete gospel than what we can find in the Bible. This was revealed by Jesus Christ Himself to a man He choose, namely the Austrian Jakob Lorber who dedicated the last 24 years of his life in the service of our Lord by writing down what He dictated to him through the inner word. He heard the words very clearly in the region of his heart and wrote them faithfully down.

This total work consists of 25 books of 100 chapters each. An enormous valuable spiritual treasure. It is up to each individual to discover and proof the many teachings that Jesus revealed to His disciples.

Revelations that were not intended to reveal to the world at that time but which are now revealed in a very clear way to us.

Book 21

*There is no copyright for this book. This is God's Word and God's Word is free.
It may be copied freely on condition that the text will not be changed.*

*Original German book: "Das grosse Evangelium Johannes" (1851-1864).
This Book 21 is translated from the German book IX 33 - 132.*

FOREWORD

It was not the intention to make of this book an "intellectual" translation, but rather to translate it as close as possible to the original text given by Jesus Christ.

The words, expressions and even the sentence structure were kept as close as possible to the original without losing its meaning.

This work was made for every simple humble person whose main purpose it is to know the truth.

The translator

(Table of contents on page 311)

THE LORD IN NAHIM IN JUDEA

1. THE RESURRECTION OF THE DEAD YOUNG MAN IN NAHIM



AFTER I had finished to give them My teaching we went immediately on our way again because the sun came already close to the evening. Within 1 hour we reached Nahim. And it is obvious that the Greeks, who were very surprised about everything and who were completely converted to My teaching, escorted us to Nahim, so that we formed quite a big caravan.

[2] Nota bene: here is an event that has great similarities with the one that happened during the 1st year of My teaching in Nain in Galilee. However, the following one took place in Nahim in Judea, and these 2 occurrences, which are very similar, should not be mistaken with one another.

[3] So when we came with a great number of people before the gate of the little city, the bearers, who were escorted by the mourners, carried the body of a young man, who died, to the grave. He was the only son of a widow, and the widow wept greatly for her only son. When the funeral procession came very close to us they stopped to let us go by.

[4] But I went to the widow, comforted her, and asked her how long her son had been dead.

[5] **The widow** answered: “Lord, I do not know You and do not know who You are, but Your words of comfort have greatly reduced my grief. But how did You come to know that the one who died is my son?”

[6] **I** said: “This I know out of Myself, and I do not need anyone to tell Me.”

[7] **The widow** said: “If You know that the one who died is my son, then You also will know how long he had been died.”

[8] **I** said: “Woman, you have rightly concluded, for I also know that your son has died 3 days ago from a severe fever. But if you

would have trust, I could revive your son and give him back to you.”

[9] **The widow** said: “O Lord, Your words are refreshing my heart really a great deal, but a dead person can and will be brought to live again only by God according to His promise on the youngest day. Or are You a great prophet, filled with God’s Spirit, so that with its almightiness You also can make a dead person alive?”

[10] **I** said: “That you surely will come to know this evening because I will stay in your inn. But now, open the casket, for I want to revive the young man and give him back to his sad mother.”

[11] On this, the bearers opened the casket and **I** went to it, took the young man by the hand and said: “Young man, I want it: stand up and walk home with your mother.”

[12] On these words of Mine the young man raised himself up in the casket. And when they loosened the cloths with which the Jews wrapped their dead, he stepped immediately out of the casket, being really strong and healthy. Then I gave him to his mother who was surprised beyond measure.

[13] This sign caused a real shock with all who were present – My old disciples not excluded – so that some ran away and others stood there speechlessly from sheer astonishment, and they did not dare to say a word.

[14] But I commanded the bearers to bring back the empty casket, so that the mother and son could thank Me now with a cheerful heart for the grace that was given to them. And full of deep awe the bearers did what I had commanded them.

[15] When the casket was brought away, and by that also the remembrance of death, first **the Greeks**, who had escorted us until here, began again to praise and to glorify Me greatly, and they said loudly: “No human being can accomplish that, but only a God!”

[16] **But the Jews** said: “Yes, yes, only with God such things are possible. However, God is only spirit, and no one can see Him and stay alive as well, but these men we can see, and death remains far

away, and therefore this Man is most probably a newly awakened great prophet, filled with the Spirit out of God. But by that He Himself is still not a God.”

[17] **The Greeks said:** “You know what you know, but we know also what we know. If you say that only God can do such thing and that such a human being can only accomplish these things because he is filled with the Spirit of God, then you recognize yourselves that God’s Spirit in Him can be impossibly anything else than God Himself. So if we glorify and praise Him as a true God, then we certainly are closer to the Source of the great truth from where all the light and life comes forth than you Jews who do not consider the One as a true God who says: ‘I want it’, and not: ‘God’s Spirit in Me wants it’, after which happens immediately what He has spoken out with His mouth and what He wills.

[18] Only a couple of hours ago we were still heathens when this God-Man came to us and made my born-blind daughter Achaia seeing with one word. And He also had destroyed our pagan temple in one moment in such a way that not the least of trace was remaining and we cannot even recognize the place anymore where it stood before. And all that, He only did it just out of Himself. Thus out of His highest own perfect power. And if He does these things and acts in such a way, He Himself must be a most true God and He does not have to pray to a still higher and more real God to help Him to accomplish a miracle, for He Himself is already the highest and most true God.

[19] This is now how we gentiles think and this is our opinion, and if we will live and act according to His teaching and accomplish faithfully His will, He will also give us out of Himself the true, eternal life, just as He now has given back the earthly life to this young man also out of Himself, for He Himself is the initial Source of all existence and life.”

2. DIFFERENCE OPINIONS REGARDING THE PERSONALITY OF THE LORD



AFTER these very sound, true words of the Greek, **a Jew of this place who was a rabbi and leader of a synagogue said:** “As a gentile who is not so well acquainted with our Scripture, you have indeed a good judgment and on many points it cannot be objected. But if you would be equally well acquainted with our Scripture as I am, you surely would be of a somewhat different opinion. Look, every time when God used a pious person for the sake of the people, such a person could not act and speak differently than as he was driven by God’s Spirit. One of our first 4 great prophets spoke almost each time to the people as if he was God Himself, about which he was oftentimes blamed by the Jews, but he could not speak and act differently than how he was urged by God’s Spirit.

[2] An example of how he spoke will clarify the matter for you. The prophet that I mentioned, who is called Isaiah, says for instance immediately at the beginning of his 42nd chapter, where he probably already announced this Man who is filled with God’s Spirit: ‘Behold, this is My Helper. I set Him apart. And He is My chosen One, and My soul is well pleased with Him. I have given Him My Spirit. He will bring justice among the gentiles. He will not shout or cry out. His voice shall not be heard in the streets. He will not break the reed that is cracked, and He will not extinguish the smoldering wick. He will teach to keep justice truthfully. He will not be bad-tempered or cruel, so that He will bring justice on Earth.

[3] So do I, the Lord God, speak, who creates and expands Heaven, who makes the Earth and its vegetation, who gives breath to the people that lives on it, and the spirit to those who conform to it. I, the Lord, have called You with righteousness, I have taken You by the hand and have preserved You and have given You as a covenant among the people and as a Light for the gentiles. You will open the eyes of the blind and lead the prisoners out of their

prisons, as well as those who are sitting in darkness in the dungeons. I, the Lord – that is My name – will give My honor to no one else, nor My glory to a human idol. Behold, what will come, I announce now in advance and I announce something new. Before it will happen I let you hear it.’

[4] Now look, my otherwise very wise Greek, in this manner God has once spoken through the mouth of a human being, so that one could think that the man Isaiah was actually God himself. But still, that was not so. And as it was during that time, so it is nowadays. Thus, this Man, who does miracles, is nothing else than the Helper who was predicted by the prophet, His chosen One for the salvation of also the gentiles, as He has just actively proven to you.

[5] Therefore, God will crown Him with the highest glory and make Him King over all nations on Earth, because He gave Him such great power as no man has ever possessed. But by that He is and remains still only a human being and He is not a God out of Himself and still less a human idol, of which you gentiles have already so many. He is a Helper of God, gifted with all imaginable power, a special chosen One. And therefore, clearly God’s most beloved.

[6] Look, this is how we Jews see it, who are very acquainted with the Scripture, but you, who are used to make a god out of every exceptional appearance, will take such a Man, who is filled with the Spirit of God, all too soon immediately for the true God because He has done signs before your eyes that most certainly can only be done by God. But still, He does such unheard-of miracles not out of His own human power, but only by the power of God’s will, which has been given to Him for a time. This is how it is, and I am convinced that He will not give a different testimony about Himself.”

[7] **The Greek said on this:** “You have now also spoken well, and you will also be right in many respects what concerns the worldly reason of men. But the prophet that you mentioned has also spoken differently in many of his chapters, which are not unknown to me, despite I am a gentile, and these could be more in favor of my

opinion than yours.”

[8] **The rabbi said:** “Then let hear us what you know.”

[9] **The Greek said:** “Good, how can in that respect the text be understood in which the prophet says: ‘A Boy is born to us, a Son is given to us and He carries His rulership on His own shoulder. His name is: Wonderful, Counsel, Power, Hero, God, Eternity, Father, Prince of Peace’. How do you explain this testimony of the prophet?”

[10] **On this the rabbi did not know what to answer, but said only something casual:** “Well yes, that is also written in Isaiah, but in a lot of his predictions this prophet is very unclear and cannot be understood, and then it cannot be determined what he meant by that.”

[11] **The Greek said:** “It is strange that you as a Jewish scribe want to give your conclusion in this manner while the born Child and the given Son, whose great name was openly spoken out by the prophet, is unmistakably standing here in person, in word and actions before us. As a Human Being who is visible to us He is also a Helper in whom God is most highly pleased because He certainly lives in all His fullness in Him. His body is only the Helper, but His soul is God from eternity. That body is surely a most high chosen One of God in whom He is most highly pleased. As a gentile, according to my natural intellect, I am practically standing closer to the truth than you with all your – according to your own testimony – unclear and incomprehensive knowledge of the Scripture.”

[12] **On this the rabbi said nothing at all anymore, became angry and left.**

[13] **But I said to My disciples who became also secretly angry with the blind rabbi:** “There you can see another example of how the light will be taken away from the Jews and be given to the gentiles. These Greeks were only a couple of hours ago still convinced worshippers of idols, and now they are standing in the true light already much higher than the Jews who, because of their knowledge of the Scripture, have such high opinion of themselves.

So be glad that it actually turned out this way. Truly, David's throne will be no more established among the Jews, but among the gentiles."

[14] Only at that moment, **the widow** with her son fell right at My feet and said: "O Lord, Lord, only now my eyes are opening! You are the Messiah who is promised to us! O forgive us our blindness by which we could not recognize You immediately!"

[15] **But I** said to her: "Stand up from the ground. Go home with your son and prepare an evening meal for us, for today we will stay in your inn. Although I already told you before, but do now immediately what I have commanded you."

[16] Then the woman stood up immediately and hurried home with her son while she was really overjoyed. And she started immediately with the preparation of a good evening meal which we surely needed.

3. WHY NEED AND SICKNESS ARE PERMITTED



SINCE the sun had already set, **I** said to the Greeks: "I let you completely free. If you want to find accommodation, you can stay in Nahim tonight, or you can also go home. Neither one or the other will be to your disadvantage."

[2] **The Greek**, who was the father of the blind girl and the head of the Greek village, said: "O Lord, Lord, Lord of eternity, it would be good to have an accommodation here. Although we are with about 100 people, but with the happy widow, and with Your almighty help, we can and will all be able to find spacious accommodation here. If we may stay in Your company tonight, then we will stay, even if tonight all our worldly stuff would go to ruin. Because to hear one word from Your godly mouth, is of a much greater value than all treasures on Earth and more than the sun, the moon and all stars. Therefore we will stay here. We have enough money with us to pay for the expenses in the inn, and even if it would cost us all our goods, then we still would stay with You, o Lord, Lord, Lord. For even if we would lose all our earthly goods

for Your sake, but have thereby actively found Your mercy, then we have made an endless great benefit. Therefore we will stay near to You, ready to bring every offering that we can.”

[3] I said: “Then stay. I will take care of all the rest, for truly I say to you: whose attitude and faith will in future times not be as yours, his soul will hardly be able to acquire the Kingdom of God. If you will always stay in this manner with Me in your heart, I will always stay with and amongst you, powerfully active in the spirit. And with those with whom I will stay, they will never have to suffer want or need, not what concerns their earthly needs and still less what concerns the needs of their soul.

[4] Want, need and all kinds of misery I only let come among the people when they totally have left Me, and have become partially dark and foolish idol worshippers and partially totally selfish and ungodly worldly men. Because need and want will force men to think about the causes of their misery and make them inventive and clever. And in this manner, there very soon will appear sensible and wise men among a people who will open the eyes of their fellowmen and will show them the source of the general misery. Then many will leave their paralyzing laziness in order to arm themselves for the battle against the loafers who became powerful and who rule as tyrants among the nations that they have made blind and who are the actual instigators of the general misery on this Earth. Often through hard battle they will be completely conquered and expelled or at least be forced to give the nations such laws that will allow them to live in a decent way. And so happiness and wealth will then always begin among men according to the measure that they have returned to their way to the only true God.

[5] If the people would never turn away from God, they also would never fall into need and misery.

[6] So, if also down the line of your descendants you will always stay in and with Me in faith and action according to My teaching, you also will never have to experience misery. Also, your souls will not be made fearful and faint-hearted by diseases of the body,

because the diseases of the body are always only the bitter consequences of not keeping the commandments that I have always clearly announced to the people.

[7] Whoever will keep these commandments already from his childhood, will not need a doctor at high age, and his descendants will not have to suffer for the sins of their parents, as this was often the case for centuries with the ancient nations who were loyal to God. But always when the people began to degenerate, then also soon serious physical sufferings came over them and they came to know the consequences of the insufficient observance or total lack of the observance of God's commandments.

[8] Because if there is for instance someone who for one or the other purpose understands how to make an artful machine, then he also understands himself how it has to be used for an efficient utilization and how the machine should be handled so that it would not be damaged and would thus become totally unsuitable for further use. And if the skilful maker says and shows to the one who bought the machine from him in order to use it, of what he has to take care to be able to use it lastingly and usefully, then the buyer should also observe precisely what the master of the machine has told him. But if in the course of time, out of stubbornness or carelessness, the buyer does not pay attention anymore as to how the machine should be handled and be used, then only himself is to be blamed when the machine becomes damaged and has thus become completely or partially ineffective for the right utilization.

[9] God is the great Master of the machine of the human body that He has arranged as an extremely artful machine for men to make good use of it. If the soul will use this machine, that was brought to life, according to the advice that was clearly announced to him – and these are the commandments of God – then the body will also always keep its good health, which is very useful to him. However, if in the course of time the soul has become lazy and sensual, and does not pay attention anymore to these

commandments of the eternal great Master of the machine, then also he himself is to be blamed when his body has fallen into all kinds of affliction. I think that you all have well understood Me, and so we will now go to the inn.”

[10] The Greeks could not thank Me enough for this lesson, and also **My disciples** said: “These were again clear words.”

[11] Then we went on our way to the already mentioned inn where already a rich and well-prepared meal was waiting for us.

4. WHY THE LORD VISITS THE WIDOW



WHEN the widow saw the Greeks also coming, she was afraid to have prepared too little.

[2] But I put her at ease and said that what she had prepared would be sufficient for everyone.

[3] She believed it, and we went to sit at the table and we had more than sufficient to eat and to drink.

[4] Everyone – and especially the widow who knew very well for how many guests she had prepared the food – began to be extremely amazed when now more than 3 times as many guests were eating and drinking for already 1 hour while it still could not be noticed at the bowls that the food in it had become less. Also the wine carafes seemed to be constantly refilling themselves.

[5] When this continued for some time, **the widow** came with her son to Me and said: “O Lord, only now I well know who came in Your very holy and adorable Person into my unworthy house. The Greeks were right when they pointed out to the old rabbi about his imaginable Jewish wisdom, and by that they showed him that they were by far the most wise. He also wisely cleared off and he did not come as usual to my place tonight. But now, o Lord, Lord, I would like to hear from Your holy mouth what made me so worthy in Your eyes that You wanted to give me, a poor sinner, such mercy to me.”

[6] **I** said: “I know your life already since your birth, but I also know your heart to which many poor people owe their life. And

that is why I have come to you in your very great need. For you yourself are already quite old and weak, and this only son of yours should be your most important support, for which you were also rightly hoping, but he became ill and died. Since I saw your grief and need, and besides that, also the need of the many poor who, because of your own weakness and helplessness, would certainly soon lose the care that they have received in your house until now, I have come to help in a miraculous way, not only you, but also the many poor and other people who are tormented by all kinds of need.

[7] Look, that is the actual reason that made Me come to you. For truly, truly, I say to you all: the one who will always, according to his means, show his poor and oppressed fellowman mercy and love in all kindness, will also find mercy, love and kindness with Me. Because the true Kingdom of God, that has now come to you in Me, is that you love God above all and your fellowman as yourselves. Whoever will do that fulfills the whole law and stands in the full mercy of God, and the blessed hand of Jehovah will be over him. Whoever will persevere in that love is and remains in Me and I in him. And whoever is in Me, as I am in him, has the eternal life in himself and he will not see nor taste death, for in this manner he is already in this world a true citizen of God's Kingdom in which death does not exist for eternity. Take all this well at heart and act accordingly, for I came into this world to bring the true Kingdom of God to the people and to free them from all blindness and the death of their souls that has kept you firmly tied until now. If one of you still wants to know something, he can ask, and I will answer him."

[8] When I had finished talking, the **son of the widow**, who had been awakened to life again turned to Me and said: "O Lord of life, look, I was completely dead and am now living again by Your mercy. If I will strictly keep Your holy will that You have now made known to us, will I then live on forever and never die anymore? Because dying is terribly bitter, and I would not like to experience it again. Once you are dead you are of course not

feeling any pain anymore, and all anguish and fear has gone because you do not know, feel, see nor hear anything anymore around you. But before you are completely dead, you surely have a lot of anguish and pain. Therefore I would like to ask You, o Lord of life, not to let me nor all other good people die anymore.”

[9] **I** said: “My dear son, I have just told you all faithfully and truthfully that the one who believes in Me, loves Me above all and his fellowman as himself, will not see, feel nor taste death, because how can anyone die who according to My words has eternal life in himself?

[10] But you also said that death is in a certain way good when one is completely dead, because then nothing can be heard, seen or felt and thus one does not know anything anymore about himself. But that, My dear son, is not your opinion now according to your feeling. Although you have the impression now that when you were physically dead you were completely dead and without awareness, but that was not so.

[11] Because the fact that you do not remember anything now of all the things that your soul had experienced while he was not in his body, I have very wisely decided. For if your soul would have kept the memory of how extremely good and happy he felt amidst many angels in paradise where he was, and how sad he became when they told him that according to the will of Jehovah he still had to return into his body, then you would, while you are now again unified with our body, not feel as glad as you do now. I could give the complete remembrance back to you immediately if I would want that. But with that I would not do any good to you because it would make you unfit for several years for this world in which you still will have many things to do.

[12] When you will be old, there will again be a time in which I will call your soul out of your body to Me. Then I will also give you back the memory in advance of the condition of those 3 days in the paradise of My angels, and then you yourself will beg Me on your knees to free you as a soul from his body that has become decayed.

[13] Although your body will then die again one more time, forever, and there will be no life's awareness that will remain behind in it, but after that, you will continue to live in a total awareness of yourself and you will ascend with My angels, become more and more happy from one level of wisdom and love to another, and you will come to know the Father, who lives in Me, ever deeper and admire His numberless, endless many great creations.

[14] Look, My dear son, this is how it is and this is how it will be. And you surely can believe this from Me, because I, who has now given you back this earthly life, and I, who am Myself the eternal Love, Wisdom, Might, Power, Light, Truth and Life, has revealed this to you now.”

5. THE CONDITION FOR A PERSONAL REVELATION OF GOD



Of course, you only have to believe all that now, but when your faith has become alive through works, then by your living faith you will begin to envision it, to feel it yourself and to be deeply convinced to know it. And that is much better for the soul of man than when he only, being convinced, accepts something after he has made the truth his own with great difficulty through his own seeking and searching by way of experience.

[2] It is true that such seeking and zealously searching soul is also worth of his salary because every worker is worth of his salary. But if a soul believes and acts according to the truth that he has – let us say – heard from God's mouth, this is better, because by that he unites through love My Spirit with himself. And that can – and also does – give him in 1 hour more of the most lightened wisdom than what he can acquire by way of very personal investigation in 100 years time. But for this reason, a pious, believing soul should not set aside the right seeking and searching, because every person should investigate everything that he hears

from men and keep that which is good and which consequently is also always true. But that which has been revealed by Myself to men, which is easily recognizable, man should not have to investigate it thoroughly. He only should believe it and act accordingly. Then he very soon will see the active result.

[3] Whoever believes in Me, does My will and loves Me above all and his fellowman as himself, to him I Myself will come and faithfully reveal Myself to him. However, in future times it will be that finally everyone who truthfully longs for Me as the eternal truth, will be taught by Me, because I, who am the truth in the Father, am like a Son, but the eternal love in Me is the Father. So whoever will be drawn by the Love or the Father, will also come to the Son or to the truth.

[4] That is why it is better to draw near to Me through love than through investigating the pure truth, for with love will come inevitably also the spirit of truth, just like with the fire, that has flared up as an active flame, will come the light. However, when someone sees from afar a light and runs to it, he certainly will need a longer effort before he can reach the place of the light in order to be also warmed up to life by the active flame of the light.

[5] Whoever will truly search God, should search Him in his own heart, thus in the spirit of love in which all life and all truth is hidden. Then he will also quickly and easily find God and His Kingdom – through every other way however, with difficulty, and in this world often not at all.

[6] It is also written in the Scripture that man should worship God. But how should he worship God when firstly he has never heard about God except at most by hearsay and moreover hardly believes that such a God exists, and secondly, when he does not really know by far what it means to worship God. God, who is the eternal and most pure love Himself, can certainly not be pleased with lip-prayer in which the heart has no part.

[7] To worship God means: to always love Him above all and his fellowman as himself. And to truly love God means: to keep His commandments very faithfully, also during oftentimes most

unpleasant life conditions which God – when it is necessary in one way or another according to His love and wisdom – brings over such and such person to strengthen him and for the life's practice for his soul who is too strongly attracted by matter. For only God knows every soul, his nature and qualities, and knows also the most clear and best how that soul can be helped on the true way of life.

[8] So God is in Himself the highest and purest Spirit, because He is the purest Love. And therefore, those who really wish to worship Him should worship Him in spirit and in truth, even unceasingly during the whole life, as also all angels in Heaven are doing eternally.

[9] If lip-prayer would be a good and God-pleasing manner of worship, and God would ask this from all men and angels, then He would be as weak, vain and unwise as a blind and haughty Pharisee who wants to be highly honored above everything and rule above everyone. For if a person had to pray God day and night with his mouth, even unceasingly, then how can he find the time to do other necessary work. And how will he then acquire the necessary food for the body for himself and his family? Unfortunately there are now among the Jews a great number of such fools, and those will also exist in the future, who will worship God with almost endless lip-prayers, and they will think that this is a real religion and that God is well pleased with it, more in particular when that lip-bawling will be accompanied with all kinds of ceremonies.

[10] But truly, I say to you all: wherever I will be worshipped and honored in this manner by men, I will immediately turn away My face and never pay attention to such worship and honoring, this to show foolish men in a practical way that such worshipping and honoring are a true abomination to Me, and that I will never pay attention to that, especially when they are done for money by the priests. Because he who prays while someone paid him for that, mumbles out such prayer only for the sake of appearances, mostly without any faith, while even the one for whom that prayer was

meant to help, became too lazy himself to bow his knees before God and therefore prefers that someone else prays for him.

[11] Thus, love God above all and your fellowman as yourselves. Do even good to those who want to do evil to you and pray in the same manner also for your enemies. Pray also for those who hate and curse you, and do not pay back evil with evil, except in the extreme case of necessity in order to perhaps turn away a real criminal from the way of sin to the way of virtue. Then I will look upon such a real and living prayer with the heartiest fatherly satisfaction and will truly not leave one of your prayers unanswered. But simply lip-prayer without heart, or without the fullest belief, I will never look upon nor answer in no matter what way. Now I have shown you truthfully the right way of life. Walk and act in such a way, then you will be and remain in Me and I in you.

[12] And in whoever I am residing through his love for Me, and from that, for his fellowman, will not walk in the night of the judgment and the death of the soul, but always in a completely clear life's daylight.

[13] And now do tell Me, My dear son, how and if you have understood that. For if you have well understood it, you will also act accordingly in the right manner, and you will become full of light."

6. THE CONCERN OF THE YOUNG MAN



HE young man said: "O Lord, Lord and eternal Master of life, I have well understood everything, and in my heart it really seems to me that already now it has become completely free and full of the light of life. That is why I am already in advance fully convinced that in time still a lot more light of life will come in me if I myself will in full earnest begin to act according to Your holy teaching. O Lord, Lord, let many, yes, all men be enlightened in Your love in this manner, then we men will already in this world be in paradise.

[2] But now I notice in myself also the deep night in Jerusalem with which we still will have to endure a lot of battles in order to let break through the general bright daylight of life. Because in the light that has now awakened in me, it is only now that I can see the terrible contrast between Your pure teaching and the hair-raising, deceitful and thereby completely false teachings and pitiful laws of the temple. How will we come to meet with these? Because the temple servants have still the earthly power in their hands, and persecute everyone with fire and sword who believes, thinks and acts differently. If they will come here and meet us while we live and act according to Your teaching, asking us for the reason, then we, as men who are standing in Your truth, will surely have to tell only the truth in order not to stand as a liar before them and also before You, o Lord, Lord.

[3] O eternal Lord of everything that exists and of Heaven and Earth, give us also in that respect an advice, for although I am still young, I can suddenly see now all too well that maybe very soon we will have to deal with very bitter and hard persecutions from the temple servants. And this all the more according to the degree that we will live and act more seriously and more actively according to Your teaching. O Lord, Lord, what should we do then?"

[4] **I said:** "Come now, My dear son. Firstly, am I not more powerful than the temple that also does not believe in Me, but that only continually persecutes Me and tries to catch Me and bring Me to ruin? He who believes in Me, relies on Me and trusts Me, I surely will also be able to help against the blind power of the temple. Do you believe that?"

[5] **The young man said:** "O Lord, Lord, forgive me my useless foolish fear. I believe, I believe without doubt. You, the eternal only Lord over life and death, will also know how to protect those who belong to You against all powers of Hell, no matter how much they will try to destroy God's Kingdom on the whole Earth and establish the kingdom of eternal death."

[6] **I said:** "Most surely, truly and certainly. But secondly, I say to

you also: be also in yourself gentle as the doves, but towards the world clever as the snakes. For I do not want that you would show and throw My pearls openly to all the worldly pigs.

[7] When they will call you to account, I will put the answer in your mouth – and really, then not 1 in a 1,000 will be capable to reply. When I also give you this assurance, you can look every battle that will wait for you, very courageously into the eye. For in this time the expansion of My Kingdom among the people will need violence, and those who want to possess it, will also have to draw it violently unto themselves. The sure victory will however not be difficult to obtain because I Myself, as the most powerful Hero, will give all help to those who fight for My Kingdom. Do you also understand that?”

[8] **The young man** said: “Yes Lord, Lord, with Your mercy everything is easy to understand. For with Your teaching You give those who seriously want to live according to its divine meaning also the right understanding and thereby also the courage to go into every battle with every enemy for the godly, pure and real truth of life and endure it until victory. For I was dead, and Your godly almighty Word has awakened my limbs again to life and forced my heart to beat again, and likewise Your almighty will has now also not allowed our bowls and carafes to become empty. Moreover You still have given us the greatest possession of life by the gift of Your teaching by which we already now actively know and realize very well what we should do and why.

[9] Now if we know all that, and have also recognized You, o Lord, Lord, as the only true God, then this should give us the fullest faith and the most hearty trust that You will also protect and preserve us in the battle against the enemies of the truth and will always give us the sure victory over them, because You, the eternal Truth, has faithfully promised this to us. In our heart we surely will be gentle as doves, but with Your help, o Lord, Lord, we also will not lack cleverness against our possible enemies.”

7. JAMES ASKS FOR THE SPIRITUAL MEANING OF THE AWAKENING OF THE DEAD YOUNG MAN



AFTER these words which were very spiritual for a young man and about which even all My disciples were very surprised, My old disciple **James the elder** said: “Lord and Master, You know how seldom a word comes over my lips, but now I feel an urge in my heart to say also a few words, if You would allow me.”

[2] **I** said: “My dear brother, if it were not My desire that you also would speak once among the people, your heart would remain quiet as usual, but I wish that you also would say something. Thus, open your mouth and tell what your inner self will give you to say.”

[3] **Then James stood up and said:** “For already more than 2 years we were with You in a lot of places and countries, and we were witnesses of the numberless miracles that You have done. And You also gave us the power to heal the sick in Your name and to free the possessed ones from their evil spirits. In short, if someone would write in a book all that which we witnessed, by far he could not even finish it in 100 years, and the intellect of even the wisest worldly person could not grasp nor understand the meaning of those scriptures. And Your deed here in Nahim has greatly moved me, and I confess here openly: in this deed of Yours seems to be hidden a very special, deep spiritual and prophetic meaning.

[4] It is true that in every of Your many teachings and deeds there is a deep spiritual meaning, and many of them I already have secretly unraveled for myself, but it appears to me that behind this deed of Yours, something very big and, for the future, very important is hidden, and I feel now a mighty great desire to receive from You some clues – even if it were only a few – as to what this deed of Yours is prophetically referring to.”

[5] **I** said: “You are right My dear brother James. Already since My earthly birth you were always near to Me and thus you also have been a loyal witness of all My earthly movements, steps,

words and deeds. And that is what you still are and will also remain. It is true that behind this deed something very special is hidden, but that which is hidden from the eyes of the people is for the human intellect as it is now, and for that of yours, not easy to grasp.

[6] Of course, in Myself I can see the whole, never ending eternity being revealed as an already accomplished deed, and thus, this is also the case of that which is hidden behind this deed of Mine. But your spirit, which is now still as if living in its childhood, cannot see nor grasp that.

[7] But since you are such a secret thinker and also understand and feel that I am doing nothing without a good corresponding meaning for the whole infinity and eternity, and since you would like to receive some clues from Me for yourself, I also can give you some. Thus listen.

[8] Look, the reason why I have come Myself as a Son of Man in this world I have told you and a lot of other people all too often, referring continuously to the prophets, and here I am bringing it forward again. And I also have shown you more than sufficiently how My teaching, which is actually a church that is newly established by Me, will go its own way during the coming times among the people. I have also shown it to you in Jerusalem with great signs in the sky. And see, what happens here now corresponds to that last and darkest time in which My teaching will degenerate into a 1,000 times greater pagan service of idols than any other pure godly teaching has degenerated until now, and in which they will build altars and temples for deceased people who will be declared holy and blessed by the priests, even for their decayed bones, and in which they will give godly honor to them.

[9] To you, My disciples, I have openly said and shown at different occasions that My Kingdom is not of this world and that you also should not be worried about what you will eat and drink the next day, but that you should try to spread the Kingdom of God and its justice among the people and should not let yourselves be paid for that by obligation, but should only accept what the love of men

will give you in My name. For you have received everything from Me for nothing, and for nothing you should also give it to others.

[10] I have also said to you and to the other 70 disciples whom I have sent out to Emmaus to proclaim to the people the gospel from the Heavens, that no one should have 2 coats, no bag to put something in it, and also no stick to resist an enemy, because My name, My word and My mercy should be sufficient to everyone.


[11] So I have also faithfully and openly said to you and to many other people that you should condemn no one in order not to be once condemned yourselves, and that you also should not curse nor damn anyone and should never persecute anyone with hostility in order not to endure the same, because with the measure with which you yourselves will mete, you also will be paid back.

[12] Yes, you should pray for those who hate and curse you, and do good to those who try to harm you, then you can expect the reward from Me, and in this manner you will pile up glowing coals on the heads of your enemies and will make them all the sooner your friends.

[13] Look, I have instructed you to teach, to live and to act under the banner of true and active neighborly love and I also told you that they always will recognize you as My true disciples for the fact that you will love one another as brothers, as I am loving you Myself, and that My real followers will always be purely recognized at the works of unselfish neighborly love.

[14] But look, it will not be so during that very dark time, but it will just be completely the opposite of this teaching which I truthfully have revealed to you.”

8. ABOUT THE SPIRITUAL CIRCUMSTANCES OF OUR TIME

URING that time, true faith and pure love will extinguish completely. Instead of that, a faith of delusion will be forced upon the people with the most severe criminal laws, just like a malicious fever forces death upon the human body. And if one or the other congregation that is strengthened by My

Spirit will come up against the false teachers and prophets who have an abundance of gold, silver, precious stones and other great earthly goods, and who haughtily, imperiously and selfishly as they are, will present themselves to the people as your only true successors and as My substitutes in order to be most honored, and if that congregation will show them that they are exactly the opposite of how they present themselves to the people with the most insolent and God-forsaken impertinence by forcing them to only search the salvation of their souls and the truth with them, then there will be battles and wars and persecutions, as did not take place yet since the beginning of men on this Earth.

[2] But the very worst and most dark condition will not last long, and then it will happen that the false teachers and prophets will finally give themselves the deathblow. Because then My Spirit, that means the Spirit of all truth, will awaken among the people who are tormented in many ways, the sun of life will begin to shine tremendously and the night of death will go down in its old grave.

[3] That dark time, which I am describing now, I have predicted to you already several times, and I mentioned it only now again so that you would discover more easily the correspondence between what happened tonight and that future time.

[4] Look, this little city, which is almost surrounded on all sides by gentile villages and little places, is still inhabited by a small number of Jews who have, just like a few orthodox Samaritans, a more pure Judaism and for who the laws of the temple are for the greatest part an abomination. They can see the bad and unclear way of acting of the temple very well, although they cannot resist it. Their neighbors are gentiles who also do not think highly about their idols, but for the sake of appearances they must still do as if these were important to them. But actually they only believe in nothing else except in a good profit that they can seize in one way or another.

[5] Look, that time, which I predicted, will happen, but then on a large scale, worldwide.

[6] A pure congregation will continue to exist in the same manner as this little city, first surrounded by people without any faith, who will only practice all kinds of profitable business and who will not care about My pure teaching and still less about the infamous paganism of Rome at that time. Under these circumstances that pure congregation will then also begin to look like a sad widow.

[7] My pure teaching will look like a widow who was really sad and whose dead son I have awakened to life again, and the faith means the dead son whom I have revived. He was killed by the malicious fever that corresponds again to the worldly mentality that is full of pursuit of profit, which also these people were beginning to do, more exactly because of the abhorring and evil deception of Jerusalem, and besides that, also because of the total absence of faith of the gentiles who are around this village, who during that predicted terrible future time will carry the name 'businessmen'.

[8] Because of all that, the formerly pure and although still young faith – because it only became established about 16 years ago by a Samaritan who came to live here and who was the husband of this widow – is lost by the fever of the worldly mentality, because he died and we met him as being dead.

[9] But then I come Myself, convert the gentiles and come with them to this place during the saddest evening of this congregation. I revive the dead faith again and give it back to the widow, thus to the pure teaching of God. And after this deed of Mine all gentiles will also come to this place, accept the newly awakened faith in one, only true God and will arrange their life according to His will that He has made known to them.

[10] However, the blind girl whom I made seeing again represents the completely unbelieving business world of that time of which I am talking about now, and it will be sparse and scanty, to such an extent that the too proud and splendor-loving kings will demand with all force heavy taxes from the people, even about what they eat and drink, and because of that, there will be great need, high cost of living, lack of faith and love among the people who will

cheat and persecute one another.

[11] But – remember this well – when the need will be at its highest point I will come for the sake of the few righteous ones, to eliminate the misery from the Earth, and I will let My pure light of life shine in the hearts of the people.

[12] And with what I have said now I have also given you, My dear brother James, the clues that you desired from Me, and you who are a powerful thinker will easily discover the rest.

[13] Although the soul of man will not feel happier when he knows the sad future before its time, it will nevertheless also not harm him when he will train himself in the correspondences, and will perceive by that how everything that is visible and what happens in this world stands in very close relationship with the inner, hidden world of the spirits, that encloses in itself all times and spaces as in a continuous revealed present and how those 2 are related to each other. Have you all well understood this now?"

9. THE QUESTION OF THE DISCIPLES ABOUT THE DARKENING OF THE PURE TEACHING OF CHRIST



WHEN they all said: “Yes, Lord and Master, that which You have clarified again to us now we have understood, but despite the many things that we have heard about this from Your mouth it is still not completely clear why You each time allow a long-lasting deep spiritual night in this world after a light has come from Your Heavens among the people.

[2] All of us, who have now received the pure teaching from Your mouth, will as active witnesses of Your personal presence, deeds and teaching pass it on just as pure to the other people, and our successors will do that also. And if there would be someone who would maybe preach in Your name another gospel to the people, then You will see it and know it very clearly. Your power will surely be able to shut the mouth of such a prophet. If that would happen, we cannot see how Your pure and godly teaching can ever be falsified and finally be changed into a very dark and

coarse paganism.”

[3] I said: “You still do not understand many things, which I surely can see. And I still have many things to tell and explain to you, but you still would not be able to grasp and bear it. However, when after My ascension I will have poured out My Spirit of all truth over you, it will guide you into all wisdom, and then you will understand and grasp everything which by far you still cannot understand and grasp now.

[4] But look, be very attentive to what I still will say to you. I will not give you a teaching, but only many meaningful examples from which it will become clear why you still cannot understand and grasp many things, despite the fact that you have already seen and heard so many things from Me.

[5] Just look and observe the light of the sun and its many different effects it has on the creatures of even only this Earth, and the rain that falls upon the soil and its many different effects on the surface of the Earth, on the plants, animals and men. In one and the same field there are healthy herbs, but between them also poisonous weeds. From where do the poisonous herbs take their poison, while they still are shone by one and the same sun, have their roots in the same soil and are moistened by the same rain and dew and are brought to life?

[6] Look, this is caused by the inner spirit that changes the light and the rain in its characteristic properties. The lion, the panther, the tiger, the hyena, the wolf and still a great number of other animals of prey feed themselves with the flesh of gentle animals and are also shone and warmed up by the same sun and they quench their thirst with the same water as the gentle and tame house animals. Then from where comes their wildness? Look, this is produced by their inner spirit that changes the gentleness in themselves into a devouring wildness.

[7] Or just enter a house where you can meet the parents who are blessed with many children. Those children have all one and the same father, one and the same mother, eat the same food at the table of their parents, receive the same teaching and the same care,

but one child is physically strong, the other weak, another child is cheerful and zealous in everything, and again another child is grumpy and lazy. Again another of those children has many talents and learns and understands everything easily. Again another is full of good will, but he lacks talents, he learns with difficulty and understands everything only slowly and seldom in the manner the lessons should be understood. So you will see still a lot of other differences among these children. Yes, what is the reason for that? Would you also here not like to say: 'But Lord and Master, why do You allow this? For which wise purpose can this be good for?'

[8] Yes, look, also this is because of the inner free spirit, which accomplishes all that. If it were not so, then there also would not be a free inner spirit, which task it is to develop and form itself to an independent existence.

[9] How this is possible and why this is so, I already have shown you at different occasions and also explained it enough to you visually, but still you do not understand deeply enough such things because the eternal Spirit of all truth and wisdom has still not completely permeated and filled your souls.

[10] However, if you will consider more in detail these images that were represented now, then with little effort it will soon become clearer to you how the purest light out of My Heavens can and will in time be changed into the deepest darkness, and that I finally have to allow this even more than that I would tie up the free spirit of life in man with all My power and authority.

[11] How would you like an Earth on which one thing would look exactly like the other as one eye looks like the other? How would you like the people when they would look the same in everything like the sparrows, when no one would be wiser and stronger than his fellowman who would look exactly like him? I think that such mathematically equal world would bore you in a very short time. And would that be different in My free Heavens if there would not be an endlessly much greater diversity and variety?

[12] Or what would you think of My wisdom if I would have given all creatures only the shape of an egg? Look, as it is, it is all very

correct and good. Now, as I said, you cannot see the reason of a lot of things, but the time will come that all of you will grasp and understand that. So let us be satisfied with what has been given to us until now.

[13] But there is still food and wine before us on the tables, so let us also do something for our body. Then we will go to rest for the night and early in the morning we will be on our way again. Whereto, the Spirit of the Father will tell us.”

[14] The Greeks were extremely amazed about these words of Mine and they praised and honored Me. But I continued to eat and drink undisturbed, and all the others did the same. After the meal I stood up, and the widow let a good bed be prepared for Me and My disciples. The Greeks however stayed at their tables.

10. THE TESTIMONY OF THE WIDOW AND HER ARISEN SON BEFORE THE PEOPLE



WHEN the widow heard that I would leave soon in the morning with My disciples, she took care on time that a sufficient meal would be prepared. So when in the early morning we came out of our bedroom and came into the guest room, the morning meal was ready, and the widow came with her son to Me and asked Me if I would like to eat the morning meal with My disciples before My departure.

[2] But I saw that the tables of the Greeks were still not set, and I said to the widow: “Look, also the Greeks, who came to believe in Me, must not go back home with an empty stomach. Set also the table for them, so that they may see that I not only give the bread of life to the Jews, but also to the gentiles.”

[3] When the widow heard that, she hurried to the kitchen to prepare also a morning meal for the Greeks.

[4] But when she came into the kitchen she saw there already a sufficient morning meal, completely prepared, and being very surprised she asked her kitchen maids who had prepared that second morning meal for the Greeks in such a short time.

[5] **The maids said:** “That we do not know, and apart from us we have also seen no one else in the kitchen, but we were just as surprised as you when we saw it, and we are overtaken by fear. That great and mighty prophet who yesterday has made your son alive again must have done it by the power of His will. Yes, yes, among the Jews a great prophet has risen, and in Him God has visibly visited His people again who began to greatly forget Him, and if the people will not repent soon and do penance, then surely a great judgment that will destroy all evildoers will follow this visitation.”

[6] **The widow said:** “Yes indeed, yes indeed, you could be completely right in that. But since now the morning meal for the Greeks has been prepared in a very miraculous way, bring it immediately to the guestroom and set it on the table where the Greeks are sitting, for this is the will of the great prophet who is filled with all godly power of the Spirit.”

[7] **After these words of the widow the morning meal that was prepared in a miraculous way was brought immediately to the table of the Greeks, and immediately after that we began to partake of the well-prepared morning meal, and besides that we were very cheerful.**

[8] **The widow was about to tell the Greeks who were very surprised about the fast preparation of the morning meal, which I ordered for them, how it has been prepared.**

[9] **But I said to her: “Woman, for what you are about to tell, there will still be sufficient time after I have departed, but now we will eat and drink what has been set on the table.”**

[10] **After this admonition of Mine the widow remained silent and she ate and drank with us.**

[11] **When half an hour later we all had finished our morning meal, I stood up, together with My disciples, and we prepared ourselves for our departure.**

[12] **But just when we, so to speak, wanted to move our feet, a great number of people from the city came to stand before the door of the inn. They wanted to take information whether the revived**

son of the widow was still living, and if the revival was real or maybe only apparent. Because also great magicians, who came often from the far morning lands to Judea, have already made dead people alive, but that life had only been for a short time, because it was only an apparent life and no real life, and therefore they wanted to know now immediately if the son was still alive or that he maybe was already losing the life, just as inevitably this had been each time the case after all revivals that were performed by magicians.

[13] Then the widow asked Me what she had to answer the obtrusive questioners.

[14] **I** said to her: “Send your son outside to them. When they will see that he is completely fit and healthy, then he himself will be the best answer to all their foolish questions. The local rabbi has persuaded them out of irritation because the Greeks showed him yesterday that they understand the prophet Isaiah better than him as an old scribe. Thus, the rabbi instructed the questioners about the magicians whom he only knows by hearsay, but whom he has never seen any of them, so that they doubt now. But if they will see your son, then all their doubts will disappear.

[15] But beware of the rabbi and the Pharisees, for in order to maintain the believe in their statements and their triumph with the people they will, when they will see that your son is still alive, try to kill him and to poison him in one way or another. Therefore, do not invite them and never let yourself be invited by them, and do also not accept any other things from them, then they will not be able to do you any harm. Observe this, then I will protect you against all other dangers. Now go with your son outside, so that they will receive by that the most simple and best answer to their many questions.”

[16] Then **the widow** went with her son to the many questioners outside and said to them, while she was pointing to her son: “Look, all you doubters, this son of mine lives and is fit and healthy. So he has been awakened from death to life by the great prophet who is filled with the Spirit of God, not apparent

but really. Go and tell this also to the rabbi who instructed you so foolishly.”

[17] **Then the son, who was stared at as if he was a wonder of the world, said also:** “Yes, yes, I am alive and am very cheerful, fit and healthy, and I also will continue to live, as the One who has awakened me from death to life has promised me, and if from now on I will do and carry out His will completely I also will continue to live and will no more see, feel nor taste death. Go and tell that also to the rabbi, so that maybe he also will believe and be blessed.”

[18] **When the questioners had seen and heard the son, whom they knew well, every doubt left them, and some began to be displeased about the rabbi because he instructed them so completely wrongly about this.**

[19] **When the widow and her son came back again into the room, she thanked Me with her son for the good advice, and they were very glad that they got rid so quickly and easily of the many troublesome questioners.**

11. THE SIGNS OF THE SPIRITUAL PRESENCE OF THE LORD



WHEN the Greek, who had been the spokesman before, came to Me again and said: “Lord, Lord, God and Master of eternity in Your Spirit. You will leave us with Your visible personality, but we ask You to stay with Your highest Spirit of God with us, and to now and then give us a sign which can be our guarantee that You think of us, and so that You are with us in the spirit.”

[2] **I said:** “Yes, and that will also be so unto the end of the times of this visible world. However, you will not have only one sign, but several signs by which you can see that I am present in spirit with you, amidst you and in you. Those sure and never deceiving signs will always and eternally be the following:

[3] **Firstly that you will love Me more than no matter what in the**

world. For if someone loves anything in the world more than Me, he is not worthy of Me, but whoever loves Me truly above all, is, through that real love, in Me and I am in him.

[4] A 2nd sign of My presence with you is that you also, out of love for Me, will love your neighbor and fellowmen, young and old, as yourself. For how can someone who does not love his neighbor whom he can see, love God in Me whom he does not see? Although you can see and hear Me now, still, from now on you will not see Me anymore in this world. And when you will not see Me anymore, will your love stay the same as it is now while you can see Me? Yes, with you this love will stay the same, but take care that it will likewise stay the same with those who will come later. For if someone will truly love Me above all in his heart – by living and acting according to My will that has been revealed to him – I Myself will personally come to him in spirit. And being completely present I will reveal Myself to him.

[5] A 3rd sign of My presence with, in and amidst you will also be that everything will always be given to you for which you will ask the Father in Me in My name and in all seriousness. However, it is obvious that you should not ask Me for foolish and unimportant things of this world. For if you would do that, you would clearly show that you love such things more than Me, and that would then really not be a sign of My presence with, in and amidst you.

[6] A 4th sign of My powerful presence with, in and amidst you will be that the physically sick people will improve when out of true neighborly love you will lay on your hand upon them in My name, if their improvement will be beneficial for their soul.

[7] It is however obvious that at the same time you will always say in your heart: ‘Lord, not my will, but only Your will be done.’ For you cannot know if and when it will be beneficial for a soul that his body should improve, and an eternal life on this Earth in a body is given to no one. Therefore, the laying on of hands cannot free always and everyone from their physical afflictions. But still, you will not commit a sin when you will show this love that has been

indicated to you to every sick person. I will be the Helper if it will be useful for the salvation of the soul of the person – and this, only I can know.

[8] If you have heard from afar that one or the other friend of yours is lying down sick, then pray for him and lay your hands in spirit upon him, then he will also improve.

[9] The prayer that you should only speak out in your heart should thereby consist of the following few words: ‘May Jesus, the Lord, help you, may He strengthen you, may He heal you by His mercy, love and compassion.’ If you will speak out these words over a sick friend – or female friend – in full trust and faith in Me, no matter how far that person may be away from you, and thereby lay on your hands in spirit above him, he will improve at the same hour, if that will be useful for the salvation of his soul.

[10] A 5th sign of My presence with, in and amidst you will be that you – if you will always do My will – will reach in yourselves the rebirth of the spirit. That will be a real baptism of life, because you thereby will be filled with My Spirit and through that you will be led into all wisdom.

[11] Let everyone strive especially for this 5th sign. Because the one to whom this sign will be given, will already in this world have eternal life and will be able to do and achieve what I am doing and achieving, because then he will be one with Me.

[12] Now I have shown you the signs of My presence. Act accordingly, then very soon you will truthfully be aware of My Spirit with, in and amidst you.”

12. THE RIGHT WAY TO WORSHIP THE LORD



N this, the Greek asked Me: “O Lord and Master, since we all have received the eternal invaluable luck to know You Yourself now in Your divine personality, and have heard from Your mouth the words of life, I am of the opinion – at least as far as we Greeks are concerned – that we should build a house for You where we can come together once a week to discuss Your teaching and to read Moses and the prophets, because on other days each one of us is working more or less anyway, one time here, then at another place, and then it is not so easy to talk with each other about Your teaching and deeds and to encourage each other to be active according to Your will. O Lord and Master, please tell us if that would be pleasing to You.”

[2] **I said:** “Why would you build a separate house while you have houses anyway in which you live? Therein you also can come together in My name to discuss about My teaching and to tell about the experiences which everyone will certainly have when they live according to God’s will. It is also not necessary to introduce a certain feast day for that which you would call – like for instance the Pharisees call the Sabbath – ‘the day of the Lord’. Because every day is a day of the Lord. And so on every day just as many good works can be done, because God does not look at a day and still less at a house that is built to honor and worship Him, but God looks only at the heart and the will of man. If the heart is pure and the will is good, and when these will make the whole man active, then this is already the true, real house of God’s Spirit in man. And so his always good and active will according to the known will of God is the true and thus also the always real day of the Lord.

[3] **Look,** this is the truth, and you should continuously stay with that. All the rest is useless and has no value for God.

[4] **In later times,** men will build certain houses for Me, and in them they will perform a certain religious service on a certain day of the week, just like the Pharisees in the temple in Jerusalem and

the gentile priests in their pagan temples of idols. To this they will still add other great and high-days in the year. But when this will become a general custom among the people, contrary to My advice and My will, the signs that were discussed before concerning My living presence with, in and amidst men will completely disappear, because in temples, which carry the phrase ‘to the greater honor of God’ which are built by human hands, I will be as less present as now in the temple in Jerusalem.

[5] But if in a community you want to build a house out of love for Me, let this then be a school for your children, and give them teachers according to My teaching. You also can build a house for the poor, the sick and the disabled. Provide such a house of everything that is necessary to take care of the people who live there, then you always will be able to rejoice in My pleasure. All the rest and that which is in addition is evil and has, as already said, no value for God.

[6] In a well-arranged school building you also can keep your gatherings and discussions in My name, and it is not necessary to build another 3rd house for that purpose.

[7] However, as to how God should be worshipped unceasingly in the spirit and in truth I have made clear in well understandable words to all of you, and therefore I do not have to add anything further to that. I have shown you the way along which you can gradually come to all truth and wisdom, and that was necessary for you at first. But act and live now in this manner, and seek God’s Kingdom especially in yourself. All the rest will be given to you in addition.”

[8] After I had said that, all those who were present bowed and thanked Me with all their heart also for this lesson. Also the widow with her son came once more standing before Me and they both thanked Me for the love that had been given to them. Then I blessed them all and we quickly continued our way.

[9] When we were traveling through the little city, **many** of who saw what I had done to the son of the widow the day before walked towards us and called out loud: ‘Hail You, great prophet of

the Lord. Through You, God has visited His people again in his great desolation. Thank and honor to Him, the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, now and in all eternity. O great prophet, who are so much filled with God's Spirit, would You not allow some of us to travel with You to hear Your teaching and then to announce it to us? Because yesterday we have concluded from Your few words that You are full of divine wisdom, and we would like to hear more of that."


[10] **I** said: "This you do not need now. However, if you want to live and act according to My teaching, then keep God's commandments whom Moses has given. Then already in this manner you will live entirely according to My teaching. For I have not come into this world to abolish Moses and the prophets, but to confirm and to fulfill all that which is written in their books.

[11] If you want to know more about Myself, then go to the widow where also the Greeks are still staying. They will surely tell you what they have heard from My mouth."

[12] After these words of Mine, the obtrusive people left us and went to the widow.

THE LORD TRAVELS THROUGH SAMARIA

13. THE CARAVAN OF THE ROBBERS

 QUICKLY moved on with the disciples along the way, which also led to Jerusalem. However, I did not yet go directly to Jerusalem but made a great detour, more precisely through Samaria and part of Galilee. In that province, most of the people knew Me already, and on different places they brought their sick ones to Me, and I also healed them.

[2] The road on which we had to travel was quite desolate and was consequently rarely used, and so we could, without being seen, often move on with the speed of the wind, as we always had done during long trips.

[3] At noon, when we were already in Samaria, we met a little caravan that traveled via Jericho to Egypt.

[4] The first leader of the caravan stopped before us and asked us in Greek if that way was leading to Jericho and if they could travel from there to Egypt.

[5] But I said to him: “Why did you actually become a leader when you yourself do not know the way?”

[6] **The leader** said: “Our home is much farther than Damascus and we are making this long trip for the first time of our life. That is why we have to inquire here and there for the right and shortest way, and that is often difficult here because it is only seldom that someone speaks our language.”

[7] I said: “Listen, if a traveler does really not know the way along which he has to travel, he is completely right to ask someone for the right and shortest possible way that leads to a foreign country. But it is not nice of you to hold us up and made us stop under the pretext of not knowing the way while you surely have traveled this road for already 20 times. The reason why you are holding us up is a totally different one and not at all praiseworthy. You think that we carry hidden treasures that you want to seize, and that is why you made us stop. But such things as you think, we do not have

with us. However, we do have other treasures in great abundance for the soul and spirit, and these we give freely to everyone who wants to possess them in all earnestness for the salvation of his soul.”

[8] **The leader** was startled at these words and said even more boldly: “How do You know that about us, and who has betrayed us to You!?”

[9] **I** said, also with a strong voice: “I know you and your 70 companions already since your birth. Your real name is Olgon, which however you never use, but instead of that, you use in every place an invented name, as well as each one of your accomplices, to make it difficult for a place that you have robbed to take information about you, to trace you up and to bring you to justice!

[10] Also you do not want to travel to Egypt now, but you know that in Jericho there is a big market where you hope to seize something. And you also know that from today in 4 weeks there will be the consecration of the temple in Jerusalem. On that feast there are always many strangers with all kinds of treasures and goods, and you really can use a lot of them. But I say to you: this time you will have a bad catch!”

[11] **The leader**, now in full rage, said: “If you still want to leave this place safe and sound, then, if you really know us, remain silent about us everywhere and travel on now quickly. For I know you also and I swear by all the gods our most terrible vengeance if ever I will somehow discover that you have betrayed us. We live from robbery, but for that reason we still are no murderers, for if we were, then you would fare badly now!”

[12] **I** said: “If you would know Me, you would say to Me: ‘Lord, be forgiving and merciful to me, great sinner, and forgive me my sins, for I want to improve my life and do penance, and I will try to make up as much as possible for all the injustice that I have caused someone.’ But since you do not know Me, you are determined to remain in your sins and you have sworn vengeance to Me by all gods while you are still a Jew and you know the laws of Moses. If you would really be a Greek, I would not have permitted you to

hold Me up, but since you are also a son of Jacob, I have permitted it, so that you would receive the opportunity to hear the truth and by that make a greater catch for your life than the one for which you have gone out now.”

[13] Then **Olgon** said in a very tempered tone: “Tell me who You are, so that I can talk with You differently.”

[14] **I** said: “I am someone to whom all power has been given in Heaven and on Earth, and all things are submitted to the authority of My will. For My will is God’s will and My power is God’s power which reigns eternally, and rules over all powers. Now you know who the One is who is talking to you.”

[15] **Olgon** said: “O, o, how is that? If all power were given to You in Heaven and on Earth, You would be more than Moses and all other patriarchs and prophets, for they only possessed little power on this Earth, as we have read in the Scriptures. And You would even possess all power in Heaven and on Earth? O, I have never heard something like it from the mouth of a human being, unless he is insane. But this does not seem to be the case with You because You firstly do not look like one and secondly there is nothing in Your words that seems to be insane. If You really possess that perfect godly power, then give us proof. Then we will believe Your words and do according to Your will.”

[16] **I** said: “If you can remain silent about it to the Jews in Jerusalem, and namely to the Pharisees in the temple and also in other places where you will meet Pharisees, because for those degenerated kind of people the light of Heaven should not shine.”

14. THE CONFESSION OF THE ROBBERS



LGON and also a few of his companions said: “Yes, we will remain silent, because we also are big enemies of the insatiable Pharisees. Formerly we all were honest Jews and we were in service of the Pharisees. Since we are lively and courageous people and also understood the Scripture, they declared the laws of neighborly love to us as follows: it is indeed

written that one should not steal nor rob nor be eager for the possession of his fellowman, but this was only referring to the Jews among each other. However, the one who is clever, courageous and strong could steal the treasures of the gentiles and also take them away with force as much as he wants and can. Then in God's eyes he would not commit any sin. On the contrary, God is well pleased with such courageous and smart Jew who steals and robs the treasures from God's enemies and offers a part of it to the temple. But one should not kill the robbed gentiles without necessity, so that they would not come down with their tyrannical laws on the Jews who were already oppressed by them beyond all measure and would then suppress them completely unto death.

[2] And look, since we considered the voice of the Pharisees as the voice of God we then became also thieves and robbers without making it a matter of conscience. Because we thought in the beginning that it was by the commandment of Jehovah that we stole and robbed from the gentiles. Just like the great king David who had to wipe out the Philistines from the face of the Earth and other evil pagan nations by the commandment of God. And God has certainly accounted it to him as a merit because He named him the man after His heart.

[3] Thus, we thought for a long time that we were men after Jehovah's heart. But when we discovered in the course of time how the temple servants themselves took away the goods of the Jews and began to grab the possessions of the poor widows and orphans, committed adultery, dishonored boys and girls, and committed still many other cruel acts, we abandoned completely the belief in a God and in Moses and went on to work for ourselves. And then, also the rich Jews were not safe from us. That is why we dressed ourselves in Greek and Roman clothing in order to grab the treasures rather from the rich Pharisees and other rich Jews than from the Greeks and Romans. However, we never took anything away from the poor, but have often given them something, especially when we were able to put our hands on a real rich booty.

[4] Since You, with Your wonderful omniscience knew exactly who we are – and also my real name was not unknown to You – You will certainly know that this is indeed our situation, as we have told You truthfully and openly. And as a very wise prophet You also will understand the reason why we in this time and already for several years have become true archenemies of the Pharisees and all the rich arch Jews. And if You now would like to give us a sign of Your almightiness in everything in Heaven and on Earth in order to revive our faith in God and in You, His special Envoy and chosen One, You can be sure that we will never betray You to the Pharisees. Therefore give us a few proofs of Your divine almightiness in Heaven and on Earth.”

[5] **I said:** “Well then, because you have said the truth now and have told Me honestly about your situation, all the guilt falls back on the Pharisees, and therefore all the more damnation will come over them. And I forgive you the sins that you have committed until now, if you will from now on completely give up your present activities and will also earn your bread as honest Jews. And this you can easily do since you have acquired more than enough earthly means by now with which you also should generously remember the poor, whether they are Jews or gentiles, this does not matter. If you will promise also that to Me honestly and sincerely, then I will also give you immediately proof of what I have said to you about Myself.”

[6] **While they were beating their breast, they all said:** “Lord, that we want and will do, as truly as we are beating our breast with our own hands, and as truly as we, encouraged by You, will believe in the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob and want to keep all His commandments precisely, also all our children and little children unto the end of the world, if God wants to help us.”

15. THE TRANSFORMATION OF THE DESERT



SAID: “Now all right then, pay attention and do not be frightened, for not one hair on your head will be touched. Look, this is a desolate region of a few thousands mornings of land. There is nothing except bare, wild rocks, only overgrown here and there with a half dried-up thorn bush and a few thistles. Because of its infertility and for the rest a wilderness, this desert is not suitable for any other thing except at the most for a miserable, difficult and hard passable way for the transport of goods.

[2] If I will transform this region and then give it to you and your descendants as property, then no one will be disadvantaged in his landed property. You stayed in this desert and in its many clefts and holes most of the time anyway, so that it became your actual place of living, which is very well known to the Samaritans and partly also to the Galileans and Jews who live at the border of this desert. And so you will, without objection, be able to call this region your property, which will flourish and be fertile.

[3] But before I will in your presence and for your sake bless this desert, I have to show you that I also am Lord over all authorities and powers in the Heavens. Therefore, open now your eyes, ears and hearts. – Reveal yourselves, you authorities and powers of My Heavens that are hidden from the physical eyes!”

[4] When I had said that, the inner sight opened up to all of them, and they saw a multitude of angels and heard an exalted song of praise. But their souls could not grasp its meaning, and many of the most lightened angels descended to Me and worshipped My name.

[5] When the former robbers saw that, they were seized with great fear.

[6] But I said to them: “Why are you actually afraid of these angels of Mine who are and will always remain submissive to Me in all bliss? For I am the only Lord over everything in Heaven and on Earth, and you were not afraid of Me for a long time, despite that I told you.”

[7] On this, all the robbers descended from their pack animals, threw themselves on their knees and begged Me for mercy.

[8] The appearance lasted for about a quarter of an hour, and during that time I commanded the angels who were kneeling down before Me, to order immediately the mightiest lightning, wind and rainstorm over this region, so that I could then bless this desert and make it a fertile land.

[9] Then the phenomenon disappeared according to My will. But instead of that, the earthly heaven began to fill itself with dense clouds. It did not last half an hour before heavy hurricanes from the south were raging in such a way that the robbers and even My disciples beseeched Me not to let them perish.

[10] But I said to them: “But already many times you have experienced such things at My side, and never one hair of your head was touched. What kind of power could hurt you when I am with you, you of little faith?”

[11] With this, the disciples were satisfied again. A few paces farther, there was however a big cave. When the storm became more and more heavy, when one lightning was followed by another one, 1,000 times thousandfold, and when the rain came streaming down from the clouds, the robbers grabbed their pack animals and fled with them to the cave, while I stayed with My disciples on that open spot, without being touched by even 1 drop of rain.

[12] The storm lasted only half an hour, and yet, the mighty many flashes of lightning had pulverized and molded the wild rocks of the whole desert into a thick layer of gray loam of more than 1 man’s height deep. With this, the gushing streams had filled up the many pits and gaps and made them thus suitable for fields and gardens. My will had invisibly filled up the many other shafts and holes in the ground, and so the whole rather big desert was changed in the short time of only 1 full hour into a luxuriant land for fields and vineyards. The storm was over, the sky cleared up and the sun shone now with its warm rays upon a new soil.”

16. THE LORD BLESSES THE DESERT



ow also our robbers came very faint-hearted out of the big cave which I did not allow to become full and filled up, and I called Olgon to Me.

[2] When he came with 2 of his most important companions, I said to him: “Well now, Olgon, do you believe that I am the One as I have introduced Myself to you?”

[3] **Olgon and his 2 companions** said: “Yes, o Lord, Lord, this we do believe now without the least of doubt. You are not a chosen One of Jehovah, but You are truly, truly and now personally in a wonderful way, Him, Him – Self. O, be forgiving and merciful to us, poor and always weak sinners that we are before You.”

[4] I said: “I have already forgiven your sins of which the Pharisees are guilty. And if you still have committed a crime against someone, according to your conscience and contrary to the law of Moses, then make it up to him, and if he will forgive you, then it will also be completely forgiven in all Heavens.

[5] However, if you will meet a hard person who does not want to forgive you, then do not be afraid in your heart, because in that case your good will will be accepted by Me instead of the work, and that implacable person will see his hardness be put as guilt on his account. For only I am the most wise and most righteous judge, who alone let happen the truest judgment most effectively to everyone.

[6] And now you have received from Me a real piece of land as present, in such a way that not even an angel from the Heavens, let alone a human being, can dispute it. But as you can see, it looks even more desolate and inhospitable than before, although it has become now extremely fertile because of an extraordinary change. Now the question is how you will cultivate it.”

[7] **Olgon** said: “O Lord, Lord, in my opinion, this can be done now very surely, easily and in a good way. Look, o Lord, Lord, when You created the Earth by the almighty godly will of Your Spirit, You also did not have the seed of the numberless plants in

one or the other way already in store, except only in Your almighty will. And You are eternally the same as the One You were at the beginning of the wonderful creation of the whole big Earth. If You will sow this region now with the almightiness of Your godly will, then this region will certainly be cultivated in the best way. O Lord, Lord, please do the same here, then the whole region that was desolate before will change in a very short time into a true Eden.”

[8] **I said:** “Do you really believe then without any doubt that I also can do that?”

[9] **Olgon said:** “O Lord, Lord, to You only, nothing is impossible. What You say is eternal truth, and this we do believe without any doubt, and whatever You want, happens. And we want and will also do Your will as You have revealed it to the people through Moses and the prophets. And we have now also heard from Your mouth what Your will is and we will act faithfully according to it, but please, You, o Lord, Lord, sow this still desolate region.”

[10] **I said:** “Then so it will be as you all believe. As this region was barren and desolate, your heart, spirit and will were quite as barren and desolate, and your complete lack of faith caused the hardness of your heart that was completely similar to the rocky soil of this desert. But I called up a mighty storm in your heart and made it softer by the heaven that opened up in yourselves, by the lightning of the truth of My words, by the mighty storm of My will that I have shown you, and finally by the terrible pouring rain of My love and mercy. And I also have sown you again with various truths from God’s mouth, which will produce for you the most real fruits of life if you will live and act accordingly. As I have sown in you now in a very short time with all kinds of food for the eternal life of your soul, this desert is now also sown with all kinds of food to feed your body.

[11] You are 70 people, and when you will travel through this region in different directions you will see an equal number of habitations that are provided with everything, and from the name that is written on it, it will appear who can take one or the other

house into possession. You will see that this region will soon become green and will flourish. Now you can go and see what I have done for you.

[12] Spread My Word also among the gentiles who will often come to you, but keep silent for the moment about the miracle, and also afterwards speak about it with only few words. It is sufficient to say that with God all things are possible.”

[13] After I had said that I very quickly moved on with My disciples, and before the converted robbers looked back, we were already far away from them.

17. TAKING THE FERTILE COLONY INTO POSSESSION



ALTHOUGH the 70 converted robbers said through Olgon that they lived far beyond Damascus, this was also not true since they only lived with their wives and children in certain difficult accessible holes and caves in this region. But they often made their robbery trips in the environment of Damascus and returned then with the loot often back to this region, which provided for them always the best safety against all pursuits.

[2] After a few moments we were completely out of their sight, and they were again very much surprised about this. Then they went on their way back and traveled along the desert to the place where their women and children were living with their possessions in a big cave that was difficult to access and which had been more spared from the storm and also did not become full of mud. When the 70 men returned so quickly into the cave, their women and children, who were still trembling from fear and anguish because of the sudden unheard-of heavy storm, were surprised that they returned so soon without any loot.

[3] The men briefly related about all the incredible and wonderful things they had experienced, and also that they now – which the women desired already for a long time – had given up the robberies for the rest of their life, and instead of that, they received from a Man, who is filled with God’s Spirit, a loot for

life which is endlessly much better for the eternal life of their soul and more valuable than all the treasures on Earth.

[4] They also told their wives and children who became more and more curious, how that Man, who was as mighty as God, had transformed by His word and His will this old and desolate desert into a true and fertile Eden by means of that terrible storm, and had given it to them as an indisputable property, and that also houses were ready in different places of this landscape that was really wild before. They were already completely provided of everything and were certainly also created by the purely godly might of the Man they mentioned.

[5] When the women heard this from their husbands, they wanted immediately and without much delay to search for those wonderful houses. However, the men thought that this would not be possible before 3 days have past because the clefts, pits and gaps would still be full of mud in which one could easily sink away completely and die.

[6] When the women heard that, they gave in, but after 3 days, they went to search for the houses, and everyone found the house that was allocated to them and they immediately moved in.

[7] The houses were placed in such a way that they could not be seen from no matter what point from the road by bypassing travelers. And this was very good for the inhabitants, because in this manner the travelers would not call on their door prematurely and trouble them with a 1,000 questions about how and when the inhabitants built the houses and how they made this old desert fertile.

[8] For in just a couple of weeks, My blessing became visible everywhere in the desert. And many Samaritans and Greeks who traveled through this former desert inquired zealously here and there about who had brought this desert into cultivation. But no one could give them any explanation. And those who knew did not show themselves much to the other people, and in the beginning not at all. Only after a few fruits were ripening, did the Samaritans come and consulted in order to decide to whom this land should be

allotted if there was still no owner who settled down in that place.

[9] Then **Olgon** came to them with several of his companions and said to those who were consulting: “Friends, this whole big desert has never been anyone’s property, just like the extensive sea has never been anyone’s measured property. We Jews, who were persecuted by the Pharisees because we could not and did not serve their evil thoughts, have taken this desert into possession to live here, and have made it fertile only with the help of the Lord of Heaven and Earth. And truly, Jehovah Himself has given it to us as an undisputable property. Therefore, you do not have to consult any further as to whom this desert should be allotted, for this has already been taken into possession by 70 families who also have set up their houses in this region.”

[10] When those who were consulting there, heard this from **Olgon**, they were unpleasantly surprised and asked a Roman judge, who traveled with them through that region, how they had to interpret this, since the desert was completely the property of Samaritans, and Samaritans had generally the right to possess it.

[11] **But the judge** said: “In which land there ever has been since times immemorial a complete desert, which is the property of no one and where there also has never been a landowner who has notified a court about his property, such a desert is free and is allotted by the court to any first one who has declared himself as its possessor. Since these men, to whom the cultivation of this former total desert can be accredited, have declared themselves now as the possessors, the indisputable property is allotted to them by right.

[12] And since they have cultivated a desert that was the property of no one before, they also will have the advantage to be exempt from any kind of taxes for 20 full years. If however, after a good harvest, they will choose voluntarily to give taxes in honor of the emperor, they will be able to rejoice in the special protection of Rome against all situations that are unsafe for them. I, judge, in name of the mighty emperor of Rome, have said, and thus commanded.”

[13] So through this juridical act, it came true that no one could dispute the possession of the cultivated desert of the 70 families. In a few years this region was one of the most fruitful and was greatly admired by all travelers, and already after 1 year the possessors had notified the court voluntarily to pay taxes in honor of the emperor, and by that they were declared and were made citizens of Rome, which gave them many advantages.

[14] Although it had to endure heavy trials, this new established community remained the most pure for many years, just like the one of the Essenes. However, also this most beautiful part of Samaria went to ruin by the devastating wars and migrations, and it soon became the old desert again.

[15] And now we will return to ourselves again.

18. THE LORD WITH HIS FOLLOWERS IN AN INN IN SAMARIA



THAT same day we came into the city of Samaria and took up accommodation there in a more remote inn. When we entered the inn, immediately the innkeeper came friendly to us, because he was hoping to earn something from us. As the disciples did not eat or drink since the morning, they were already very hungry and thirsty, which I surely knew, although they did not grumble secretly among themselves this time, as was often the case at such occasions.

[2] And therefore, **I Myself** asked the innkeeper immediately: “Friend, we have made already a very long trip today and did not take anything since this early morning, for no inn could be found along the whole way, and thus we are hungry and thirsty. What can you quickly give us to eat and to drink?”

[3] **The innkeeper** said: “You are close to 40 people. Therefore, an equal amount of fishes and breads, and also an equal amount of cups of wine will certainly not be too much.”

[4] **I** said: “Just let prepare twice as much of fishes, because your fishes are of a small kind, and then 2 for each one is not too much.

But take care to prepare them quickly and well. And in the mean time give us wine, bread and salt.”

[5] **Being a bit embarrassed the innkeeper** said: “Yes, my dear and valued lords, everything would be fine if I only had in store what you want. It will be somewhat difficult with the fishes and also with the bread because I do not have that much in store since my inn is generally only scarcely visited because of the unfavorable remote location. But I can serve you properly with wine. In short, whatever there is, you will also receive, but more than that, even God cannot desire from man.”

[6] **I** said: “Although you have said this very nicely, however, you are better off with your fishes than you have said here. But you are secretly a little worried that we finally will not be able to pay for those 80 fishes, and that is why you pretend to have a smaller provision. Yes, you are indeed a bit short of bread today, but not of fishes. So be not worried and let quickly the number of fishes that are desired be prepared, and bring us bread and wine.”

[7] **On this, the innkeeper** left quickly, started all the work and ordered his servants to bring immediately bread, wine and light to the guestroom, for it was already late in the evening, and darkness dominated the room. When the guestroom was illuminated, the innkeeper came again to us and assured us that we will be excellently served within ½ hour. At the same time he looked very carefully at us and did actually not know what he had to think about us, because some of us were wearing Greek clothing, some Jewish and some, like Me, Galilean clothing.

[8] **When his curiosity became too much, the innkeeper** turned very politely to one of the disciples who was closest to him, namely Thomas, and said: “Friend, allow me to ask you a question.”

[9] **Thomas** said: “There at the head of the table is the Lord. Ask your question to Him. He will give you the best answer. We all are His disciples and servants of His will.”

[10] **Then the innkeeper** came to Me and said: “Lord, forgive me my liberty and to some extend my intrusion. I so gladly would like

to know which country's children you are. According to your clothing you are Judeans, Galileans and also Greeks. What is your profession? You are certainly not businessmen, because you are carrying no merchandise, nor do you seem to be artists or magicians, because you look too honest for that. And how could you know that I was more provided with fishes than with bread? In short, your appearance here in my remote and always only seldom-visited inn seems a little peculiar to me. Forgive me if I speak to you more openly than usual.”

[11] **I** said: “Look, curious innkeeper, after we will have strengthened ourselves with the bread, the wine and the fishes, I surely will tell you from which country we are. But do you take care that the evening meal will quickly be prepared and bring some more wine and bread, because we already finished the first very moderate quantity that you gave.”

[12] When the innkeeper heard that from Me, he left immediately and brought sufficient bread and wine.

[13] **I** said to him: “Now look, it seems that you are now also better off with the bread than before. Also this bread seems bigger and better to Me than what you have served us at first. What is actually the reason?”

[14] Nota bene: I surely knew the reason. I only asked the innkeeper so that he would examine himself.

[15] On My question the innkeeper was very surprised and he did not know what he had to answer Me on this. He tasted the bread that seemed strange to him and in his opinion the taste was extremely good.

[16] Only after a while **the innkeeper** said: “Strange, because otherwise I always know what is and what happens in my house, but from where my wife has secretly obtained this true king's bread, I truly do not know. But it is really very wonderful that my bread storeroom is now completely filled with this kind of loafs of bread. But no matter how, I am glad that I am provided in the best way with bread again for certainly several days. But I have to find out with my wife to know from where this bread has been

obtained and who paid for it, and for which amount. For this kind of true king's bread is expensive, and 1 loaf of bread could well cost 4 coins."


[17] Then he called his wife and asked her from where the bread came of which his bread storeroom was now suddenly completely filled and how expensive it was.

[18] The wife tasted the bread also, was even more surprised than the innkeeper before and swore by her faithfulness that also she did not know in the least from where the bread had come.

[19] Then they also asked several servants if they knew from where the many good breads had come into the bread storeroom. But they also swore that they did not know anything about it.

[20] Then I said to the innkeeper: "Why do you keep asking for it? Be glad that your storeroom is full of bread, and take care that the ordered fishes will quickly come on the table. Many mysteries can maybe be solved later."

19. THE INNKEEPER ASKS FOR THE LORD

HEN the innkeeper went with his wife and with the servants to the kitchen again, and soon after that, the ordered fishes that were very well prepared and a big scale full of well-cooked lentils were put on our table, and we began to eat. And the innkeeper himself had to join us, became very cheerful by that and told us a lot about all the wonderful things that happened in Samaria a few years ago.

[2] Among other things he (**the innkeeper**) said: "I am really surprised that you as Judeans, Galileans and Greeks seem to know almost nothing about the famous Galilean who about 2 ½ years ago came here with a few disciples and related in wonderful wordings about the coming of the Kingdom of God, and who performed miracles in and near the city which are only possible to God. And recently some Judeans came here who said that they were sent out by Him to proclaim the gospel to all nations. And we also believed them because they confirmed their statement

also by very remarkable miracles, since by the laying on of their hands in the name of the One who sent them they suddenly healed a lot of sick people. Besides, their teaching was exactly the same as the one that He Himself was teaching here during the time that I mentioned, and that is why we believed those disciples all the more.

[3] Please tell me, now that we are so joyfully together, what you know about that great Man who is according to me truly more memorable above no matter what, and who is also exalted far above all men, because to us Samaritans, He is irrevocably the promised Messiah, the Savior and Redeemer of men from the power of every enemy of the truth, the love, the life and its freedom. Oh please tell me if and what you know about Him, and also what you think about Him.”

[4] **I said:** “Friend, we know a lot about Him and have a lot to do with Him, but if He Himself has been here 2 ½ years ago, as you say, teaching and performing miracles, you one time must have seen Him personally? Or did you not have the opportunity to see Him personally when He was present in this city?”

[5] **The innkeeper said:** “Friends, this is now for me so regrettable. Exactly at that time I was absent because I had to finish a business matter in Tyre, and my personnel came only to know about Him when He was already over mountains and valleys¹. When I came home a couple of days later I heard in the whole city and environment talking about nothing else except about that Man, His teaching and His deeds which are so unbelievably great and wonderful that a stranger can really not believe it when he is told, even though they truly came to happen only by the word and the will of that Man.

[6] There is a wealthy doctor living here with a woman, who, as everyone knows, did formerly, as far as her chastity is concerned, not have such a good name. The mentioned doctor must have known that Man very well and has also received the wonderful

¹ Meaning: ‘when He was already far away’.

power to heal all kinds of diseases only by the laying on of his hands. From that doctor I then also came to know most about that Man of men. He also described His outer appearance to me, but even with the best of descriptions, reality always remains in the dark. You can form some image in your imagination, which finally however will still not correspond to reality. And so, for very understandable reasons I cannot have an exact idea of the appearance of that great God-Man.

[7] In the land of Samaria there is also a certain John¹ walking around, who formerly was a beggar, but who now also proclaims to other people the teaching that he heard from that great Man. He lives a strict life himself, and through prayer and the laying on of his hands in the name of that great Man he also heals many diseases, and those who are possessed he also frees from their tormenting spirits. Well, the man that I mentioned came also a few times to me and told me many things, and that is why I have always served him in the best way according to my ability, but still, I cannot completely imagine how this great God-Man looks like.

[8] One year ago, when I heard from many travelers many great things about His activities, I traveled a whole month to find Him and came into the place where He taught and worked shortly before that. But when I arrived in the place and zealously inquired about Him, it was always: ‘Yes, 2 or 3 days ago He was here and He has said this and that and has done this and that,’ and I have also seen enough proofs to know it was really so.

[9] In short, I have found an abundance of valid proofs that He was there and was active, only Himself I have never come to see yet. But from a rich Jew from Bethlehem, who also had much to do with that great God-Man and who believes in Him, I heard that He comes to all great feast days in Jerusalem, actually in the temple, and teaches the people, although the dark and evil Pharisees are in the highest degree rebellious against Him. And

¹ John, who suffered from gout – see volume 1, chapter 73.

that is why I, although I am a Samaritan who is despised by the arch Jews, still want to travel to Jerusalem during the next temple sanctification and see if I can maybe once come to see that great God-Man.

[10] But for the mean time, a traveler can already make me more than happy if only he can tell me a lot of things about Him. If he can do that and if he also in his faith will conform himself to that great Man who became really holy to me, then he can spend his time with me in the house as long as he wants, can or likes, and his accommodation and even the best food will cost him nothing. Truly, if you can also tell me many things about that great Man – but completely according to the truth – then with me you also will pay the bill most lightly. Thus, my dear men, tell me also something about Him.”

[11] **I said:** “Yes, My dear friend. I can tell you a lot of things about your great God-Man, in whom the fullness of the divine Being is incarnated. And I can finally even show you His most true image if only you could keep your mouth under control for a few days. But in this point you do not seem to be a champion.”

[12] **The innkeeper said:** “Yes, when it concerns my holy God-Man You could be right, because that which gives someone such great joy and fully stirs up the heart, he hardly can keep quiet. However, if it is necessary, then I also can keep silent. You all can be completely sure about that.”

20. THE MIRACLE OF THE NOBLE FISHES



SAID: “Well then, I will see if I can tell you something nice and true about your great Man. So listen:

[2] Look, as far as I know and according to My best knowledge that Man is the same Jehovah who also talked to Adam, Noah, to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, to Moses and still many other prophets. The difference between then and now is only that at that time He, as the eternal Lord of all creatures, talked to the awakened spirit of man only as the purest Spirit full of love, life, full of the highest wisdom, might, power and authority, and has revealed Himself in this manner to them. However, in this time it has pleased Him – as He promised several times through the mouth of the prophets – to assume Himself a body, this out of very great love for the people of this Earth whom He created to become His children and to whom He, already since the time of Adam, has given Himself that name, and to educate them for Himself as a visible Father, so that they will be, live and inhabit eternally with Him, where He Himself eternally lives, creates and rules the infinity.

[3] That is why it is written: In the beginning was the pure Word, and God was the Word through the mouth of the patriarchs of the Earth, all the true wise men and the prophets. However, the eternal Word, thus God Himself, is now flesh. So He became a Human Being, and so the Father came to His children, but they did not recognize Him. Thus, He came to His property, and they do not want to acknowledge Him as the only true and eternal Father. But still, there are also many who acknowledge Him as the One He is, and who with all love conform themselves to Him only. These are as well Jews as gentiles, and the gentiles more than the Jews. Therefore, according to His Word, the light will be taken away from the Jews and given to the gentiles.

[4] If you can value that which I have told you now about that great Man you surely will be able to conclude that I certainly know that great Man very well.”

[5] **The innkeeper said full of joy:** “Oh, oh, oh, that is amazingly good and outstanding. That is also our belief. I gladly wanted you to confess this already a long time before, but since you are not Samaritans I had to proceed smartly in order not to expose myself to certain unnecessary rude words, as already happened a few times to me. Because in my opinion, that which is holy is not for the pigs, who are walking around before our eyes in puffed up human form and who consider us as to be much less than what they think to be.

[6] But since this is your opinion about the God-Man, you are also my free guests, no matter how long you want to stay with me. Although I am not a rich innkeeper, but I still have enough in store that we cannot consume in 1 year. Oh joy and more than great joy that I have found in you such highly enlightened friends and loyal believers in the only true God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. But let now be served immediately more of the best wine, and let, together with those too few fishes – which were all of a too small kind and because I only have a very small provision of fishes left – 4 lambs be slaughtered and let them be well prepared quickly, for such true friends of God may not suffer hunger or thirst in my house.”

[7] **I said to the innkeeper:** “Just keep the lambs alive for today, and instead of that, have a look in your big fish tank, for I have the impression that still a lot of big and noble fishes from the Lake of Gennesaret are in it. If there are some of them in there, then let about 40 pieces be prepared for us.”

[8] **While he was shrugging his shoulders, the innkeeper said:** “A couple of weeks ago there were some of them in it, but if they are still in it now – as You noticed with a discernment that is totally unexplainable to me – I dare not say. Although I was not present when they removed the fish out of my big fish tank, and so it could well be that some of them were left behind, but it will be hard to find 40 pieces. Yes, in the big provision pool that is a couple of field-tracks away from here, I still have a reasonably big stock of all kinds of fishes, but there will not be many noble fishes

in it, because the noble fish is a predatory fish, and if you mix them with the other fishes, he causes great damage.

[9] But because you made me so happy with Your testimony, I will on Your word go anyway and check it out about the noble fishes. If curiously enough it would be the same as with the breads of which it is still by far not clear to me how they were multiplied and ennobled, then I almost will have to think: You also are an authorized messenger of that great Man, of my only Lord and God. And I think that I will not be far from the truth if I consider you all as such. But now I will go to the noble fishes.”

[10] **Then the innkeeper left the room quickly and went to his wife who was still busy in the kitchen for the personnel of the house, and he told her.**

[11] **But the woman said:** “O you too credulous man. From where do you think those 40 fishes will come? You will not find even one in it, for I have sold them all 5 days ago to the doctor who gave a big dinner. And I have put the beautiful money in your cabinet, and I think that he ordered someone to remain silent, to fill up the bread storeroom with the king’s bread in return for the favor that was given to him.”

[12] **The innkeeper said:** “Look, you were always a woman who has it hard to believe. It may be so, but it is more likely that it is not so. However, your unbelief will not prevent me from checking the biggest fish tank. Whether you will go with me or not is the same to me.”

[13] **After these words of the innkeeper, his wife went with him anyway. And how surprised they both were when they saw the fish tank full of the most noble fishes, and so they were really astonished.**

[14] **Again, the innkeeper called all his personnel together and asked them seriously if ever they knew how those many and very expensive noble fishes came into the fish tank. But they all swore by Heaven that they did not know.**

[15] **Then the innkeeper said:** “Truly, these things are not happening in a natural way. One of the guests who came here

tonight, who are all somehow mysterious, must have done it.”

[16] **And while he turned to his wife and his kitchen personnel, he said:** “In short, those fishes came here suddenly in a miraculous way with many hundreds at the same time. So instead of 40, take right away 50. Make a bigger fire and prepare them in the best manner, because I myself will eat some of those fishes.”

[17] **Then the helpers came immediately into action and took the desired fishes out of the fish tank. And before 1 hour had past, the beautiful noble fishes were put well prepared before us on the table.**

21. THE INNKEEPER RECOGNIZES THE LORD



UT the innkeeper was already before with us in the guestroom and brought also his eldest son with him who was blind in one eye.

[2] **When he came to us being fully amazed, he (the innkeeper) said to Me:** “Good and dear Friend, immediately after Your testimony about the great Man, I suspected that one of you might be an exceptionally authorized messenger of the great God-Man, because the minor ones are sent first, and now the greater ones are following. And now that I also have seen the biggest fish tank full of noble fishes – and this on Your word – I am not doubting anymore that you are evidently messengers of that great God-Man, about whom You gave that complete true testimony. One of you will certainly be the most important, and I finally think that You are that Person. If it is so, then please tell me, so that I can give You very special honor, because our precept is always: ‘honor to whom honor is due’.

[3] **I said:** “Do not worry about that now. It is true that I am the first One among these My companions, but in a very different manner than you think. But it is good that the noble fishes are there, and there is still good wine. All the rest will become clear later on, and this at the right time.

[4] **But what is the matter with your half-blind son over there?”**

[5] **The innkeeper** said: “Ah, how do You know that he is half-blind and that he is my son?”

[6] **I** said: “Oh, it is not so strange to see that, for he looks much like you. You are spiritually half-blind and this son of yours is blind in a natural way. Finally, you both can be helped. Were the disciples of that great Man, about whom you just related, not able to heal that one eye of your son?”

[7] **The innkeeper** said: “Yes, they did try it, but they did not succeed. Also that John has been here for that reason a couple of times, but he did not succeed either to give back the light of my son’s one eye. And so he will have to bear this little discomfort with patience. Since I was of the opinion that you were perhaps the still more powerful disciples of the Lord, I let him come with me inside, hoping that you could maybe help him. But since you are not, he can return to work in the kitchen.”

[8] **I** said: “Ah, that is why he has to stay there. He certainly will become seeing sooner than you.”

[9] **The innkeeper** said: “But dear Friend, just look at my eyes. I can see exceedingly well with both my eyes. Then how can my half-blind son become seeing sooner than I?”

[10] **I** said: “I told you before that you are half-blind only spiritually, and that your physically half-blind son will receive sooner the complete light in his eyes than you the light of your soul. But now nothing more of that, there are the fishes already that we will eat, because the first meal for more than 40 men was somewhat shortly measured despite the fact that you added the lentil dish. But this time, you and your son should eat with us. Your wife should not receive anything to eat of these fishes today because it is hard to make her believe. Tomorrow she can prepare also a fish for herself and strengthen her faith.”

[11] When the fishes were put on the table and I took first a fish for Myself, immediately all My disciples took a considerable amount of food, because it was already known for a long time to them that this kind of fish was the best. We ate and drank cheerfully and we often talked about the great Man from Galilee,

fully praising and honoring Him. This made the innkeeper extremely cheerful, and so, every now and then, he proposed a toast to Him with his cup of wine and expressed exalted wishes of happiness to Him. Furthermore, one after the other, My disciples related some events that happened on our trips and also a lot about My childhood, which was greatly appreciated by the innkeeper.

[12] When they finished to tell their stories that lasted almost until midnight, **the innkeeper** turned to Me with the request: “My dear and uncommonly wise Friend, You have told me now so much about that great God-Man that I now already consider myself as the most happy person in the whole world, and this is also really what I am for the greatest part. But I would now feel completely happy and be as blissful as the highest angel in Heaven if only I could see a well resembling image of that great God-Man. Friend, You have promised me already before that You would show me one. If You have one with You, I ask You to show it to me.”

[13] **I** said: “Yes, yes, you are right, I have promised you and will also keep My promise, but I also told you after that, when you brought in your half-blind son to us, that he would become completely seeing sooner and that you finally would probably also become completely seeing in your half-blind soul. Because as long you are half-blind in your soul, you will not be able to distinguish the true image of the Lord and Master and look at it clearly. Therefore, let your son come to Me now, then I will see if I can open his blind eye and fill it with light.”

[14] After these words of Mine, which surprised the innkeeper, he placed his son before Me and said (**the innkeeper**): “Friend, there is my son. Try You too now, to see if You will succeed to make him seeing.”

[15] **I** said: “Very well, My friend, I want your son Jorab to see. So be it.”

[16] After these words the blind eye of the son became seeing. Father and son were simply startled about this sudden healing. And **the son** said: “Father, this Man must be much more closely related to that great God-Man than all the others who have tried to heal me

in His name. Those men said: 'In the name of the Lord Jesus Jehovah, let there be light in your eye.' And see, it still remained blind. But this Man said: 'I want your son Jorab to see. So be it.' So our Friend healed me by His own power when He said: 'I want it.' Therefore, He is the great God-Man Himself and no one else. And you, father, are still half-blind in your soul if you cannot see that immediately, and He Himself is the most true image of Himself, full of life, might and power of God, for only God can say: 'I want it', but man can only say: 'May God the Lord will this or that.'"

[17] After the son had said all that, also the innkeeper became seeing, recognized Me and fell on his knees before Me and asked Me to forgive him.

[18] But I said: "Friend, what do I have to forgive you? The fact that you have recognized Me only now? I wanted it that way. And so, be completely happy now. But tell no one in your house before I tell you. But take care now that we receive a place to sleep. Tomorrow we will determine what to do next."

[19] The innkeeper stood up now from the ground and began to thank Me beyond measure because I had considered him worthy for such invaluable mercy.

[20] But I said to him: "Do not make too much fuss about it, so that the attention of your house personnel would not prematurely be drawn on Me. If your wife, your other children and your personnel will see that Jorab can see and will ask you and him how he became seeing, then say: the guests who came here were able to do that, for the great Lord is more with them than with those who did not succeed to heal the blind eye of Jorab in His name. But go now and let be prepared a place to sleep for us."

[21] Then the innkeeper left and let 40 resting chairs be prepared for us in the big dormitory. Then he came back to show Me respectfully the way. We stood up from our benches and went to rest.

[22] However, the innkeeper still talked to his wife and also to his adult children about many things, but he did not betray Me,

although his wife made a few times the remark that maybe I Myself could finally be that miraculous Master who 2 ½ years ago performed such great signs in Samaria. She thought that for certain reasons I possibly did not want to make Myself known immediately, as was the case during My first visit to this city. She would look at Me more sharply during the daytime, for she had the luck to have seen Me a couple of times during My first presence in this place. And after this conversation, also the family of the innkeeper fell asleep and rested with us until sunrise.

22. THE SPIRITUAL MEANING OF THE EVENTS IN THE INN



IN the morning, everyone was soon busy in the house to prepare a good morning meal for us. We stood up also from our resting chairs and went again to the guest room where the table was adorned with rich and costly service items. There was much gold and silver, and the tablecloth was made of the finest byssus¹ and at the edges gold and pearls were woven into it. Also the wooden benches of the day before were changed with richly adorned chairs.

[2] **When My disciples** saw that, they said: “Just look, Lord and Master, how this innkeeper is honoring You. Such consideration from an innkeeper we almost have experienced nowhere else.”

[3] **I** said: “Do you think that I am well pleased with this? Only in the love of the innkeeper I am well pleased, but in this splendor not at all. But since I surely knew with what kind of faith and with what kind of love the innkeeper clings to Me – although he only heard about Me and had therefore the strong desire to see Me once personally in his life – I came with you in his house so that he should find Me, recognize Me and finally also see Me very close to him. Why I set it up that way and why I let it also happen, you, who are My most important successors and disciples, and who

¹ Fine linen clothe from India and Egypt.

especially should understand the secrets of My Kingdom on Earth, must hear it and have it explained from My mouth.

[4] Look, also in the future there will be a lot of people, when they will hear about Me, who will search Me everywhere with great zeal, and also My Kingdom. But being half-blind in their soul, they will nevertheless not find Me completely when they will travel after Me to this and that place. When people will say to them, after they search for Me: ‘He was here and is now there and there – just go there, then you surely will find Him’. Those who will search Me will hurry to that place to find Me, and still they will not find Me, for as I have indicated to you repeatedly, many will say: ‘Look, here He is’, or ‘There He is’, or ‘He is in this house’, or ‘in that room’, but then do not believe it. For if someone believes in Me without doubting, and truly loves Me in his heart above all and thus also his fellowman as himself, and if he also has a continuous growing desire to see Me personally and to know Me and My will ever deeper and clearer, I will in the same manner as here be present very unexpectedly very close to him, although he thinks that I am still somewhere else in an unknown faraway place, and then I will make Myself known very close to him, living with him in the same house and eating with him.

[5] The one who really wants to find, see and speak to Me in the future when I will have returned to My Heavens again, should not search Me in the world or in certain houses, temples or rooms, but very close to him, that means, in his heart. And whoever will search Me in this manner, will also find Me, but although I will be with him, he will not recognize Me as long as he will remain half-blind in his soul.

[6] A person is half-blind in his soul as long as he – although he grows in faith in Me and in his love for Me – comes from time to time into all kinds of little doubts and the blunt conditions of life through the manifold influences of the world. And therefore, he will still not be aware of Me, although I am often very close to him and act and speak to him as a very good friend. And then he asks Me with full awe, real faith and also full of love where I am and if

he will ever come to see Me once, and how and when, and if this would happen already in this world or only later in the other eternal world of existence.

[7] His physically half-blind son indicates the sensorial and the mind of the person. The sensorial is the eye that can still see this world. The mind is the eye that is blind for this world and its enticements and therefore it is turned inwardly, but which I can see and which I heal and enlighten completely. As soon as this eye becomes alive, it soon overpowers the sensorial eye that can see the world and turns that also inwardly. When this happens, the whole person becomes enlightened and seeing, and he sees and recognizes Me soon, and then he is surprised that he was not able to recognize Me for so long because I was very close to him already for a long time and could easily be recognized in My activity and My talking and teaching by means of many facts.

[8] What I have told you now, you also can teach the people and thus show them that I look up everyone at home who seeks Me first with real faith, then from that in love for Me and from that in love for fellowman. Remember this well.”

[9] The disciples, especially My James the elder, thanked Me very much for this enlightenment, because – as already said – this disciple was most busy with the spiritual correspondences, as well as John and Peter.

23. THE SPLENDOR ON THE TABLE DURING THE MORNING MEAL



AFTER I had finished this explanation, the innkeeper came with his healed son to tell us that the morning meal would soon be put excellently prepared on the table. And at the same time he asked Me very respectfully for advice to know what he should do, because his wife and children were continuously bothering him to tell them who I am and from where I came, since I was able to make the blind eye of his son completely healthy again without any other helping means. He, as

well as his son did not want to betray Me because I forbade them.

[2] But I said: “Since I quickly will continue My way after the morning meal, you can then reveal to them who I am and from where I came. Because if you would tell them now directly, My presence would soon be known in the whole city, and then you will really be in trouble because of the crowding of the people in your house. After My departure, you still will have a lot to do with the curious ones. How much more would that be the case now that I am still present.”

[3] The innkeeper and his son were completely satisfied with this and he left to take care of the morning meal.

[4] It was immediately put on the table in silver platters, as well as the wine in big silver cups. My platter and cup of wine were made of the purest gold, and I asked the innkeeper why he did this, since I am never pleased with such earthly splendor.

[5] And he bowed deeply before Me and said (**the innkeeper**): “O Lord and Master, it is true that I know that You are never pleased with such things, and that, when we honor and praise You, that You are only pleased when it is done with a heart that is filled with pure love. But in me You have already found someone who has honored and praised You above all in his heart and who from now on wants to honor and praise You even more in this manner. And I thought that I would commit a sin if I would not also give You, as the highest Lord of Heaven and Earth, the honor in the way that is already given to men who are of a certain esteem.

[6] For You have created the whole Earth with everything that it contains, and thus also its gold and silver. And so also these metals – which have been recognized by men for already a long time as the most noble and thus also the most valuable – are testifying of Your love, wisdom, might, greatness and honor. And therefore, in my simplicity, I think that it is better that You as Creator of also the gold and the silver should be honored in our human manner with these metals, instead of committing a shameful usury with it or for its sake to wage the most bloody wars and to call out as from Hell a thousandfold calamity over poor humanity.”

[7] I said: “Yes, yes, you are of course right in this. If all men would think the same as you, and their heart would have the same attitude, then gold, silver, pearls and all costly precious stones would not bring them disaster. But because men think that it is important to honor God with gold, silver, pearls and precious stones, they think quite differently, and have thus also soon a different attitude, and so it would be very unwise of God if He would let Himself be honored with that which caused the most and greatest disasters among people at all times.

[8] Also the patriarchs of the Earth thought like you, and they honored God before golden and silver altars and performed their honoring prayers of praise in temples that were richly adorned with gold, silver and all kinds of precious stones, as you can see in the temple in Jerusalem. But what was the result of that? Look, precisely by that the mentioned metals, pearls and precious stones became extremely precious in the imagination of the people.

[9] When finally they estimated a too high value to these things with which they worshipped God, they began to delve more and more into the ground to search for gold, silver, and pearls and precious stones. By that they slowly forgot God and thought that they would already highly honor God and receive enormous merciful gifts when they could lay, in His honor, a big piece of gold, silver or a lot of precious stones on the altar.

[10] But since not all men were so capable to find what is mentioned to please God, they asked the patriarchs – who were also priests at the same time – how many sheep, cows, oxen or also calves and bulls they had to offer God instead of so and so much gold and silver to please Him as much as the one who offers pure gold and silver to God.

[11] Then the elders and priests noticed very soon that it was easily possible and also more or less harmless to combine a profitable business with religion, and that it was also very useful to religiously uplift and reassure the people. And so the priests began to weigh the gold, silver, pearls and precious stones and to determine their value according to the number of several animals,

and later also according to the amount of grain, fruits, good wood for construction, wine, dress materials and also a lot of other things.

[12] Through this, originated the exchange dealings and the illicit trade, the money changing with the evil usury, then envy, hatred, anger, persecution, lying, cheating, lewdness and earthly splendor, importance, superiority, pride and contempt among the people. This is so since they did not measure their value anymore according to their inner soul's nobleness, but only to the weight of gold and silver, pearls and precious stones, to the extent of the flocks, fields and vineyards and the greater possession of still other things.

[13] It is obvious that the poor became envious of the rich and began to reduce their riches by all kinds of tricks. And it did not take long before theft, robbery and murder came soon after that, because when materialism prevails more and more, the spiritual goes to ruin, and finally God will become for men an old, worn-out, insignificant and useless concept whom they cannot imagine anymore. Then total godlessness and through that, all imaginable evils are common for everyone in the most unscrupulous way. Men take up arms, and a part of the people, who think that they are better, try to subdue the evil part with violence. And when this succeeds, there will be laws with the most severe punishments when they are not observed. And this is how dictators – and opposite of them the slaves – arise on Earth.

[14] Look, all this is the result when men use the gold, the silver, the pearls and the precious stones for no matter what outer worship, thinking that these things are the most pure and most noble matter.

[15] What concerns the outer worship and glorification of God, this has already been taken care of by God Himself since eternity, because that is the reason why He created Heaven and the whole visible nature, this whole Earth, the moon, the sun and the numberless stars that are celestial bodies of such magnitude that can hardly be spoken out, and that are full of light and the most

beautiful things, and little creatures on their very big and vast plains and fields. And this is sufficient for the outer glorification of the great God and Master over everything since eternity. And thus, He does not need gold and silver, no pearls and no cut and polished stones of this Earth.

[16] The only true worship and glorification that is pleasing to God consist of and should always consist of a pure heart that loves God above all and fellowman as oneself, and thus also – which is the same – by faithfully keeping the commandments that He gave to all men through Moses. All the rest is vanity and foolish, also when it is done by a pure person who is pleasing to God. It is true that God is outwardly honored by certain people like the Pharisees and the pagan priests and priestesses who worship idols, and also by apparent pious people who are servants only with the eyes, and by hypocrites while they themselves are completely not believing in Him and have never believed in Him, and this for money and other considerable offerings. But this is not only worthless to God but it is an abomination in His eyes, and this is also the case with everything that is grand and brilliant in the eyes of the world. Remember this, My friend, since you have heard it now from the mouth of the One who does not let Himself be honored and praised by no matter what kind of matter, but only by a pure heart that is completely dedicated to Him and with a dedicated will.”

[17] Being very embarrassed **the innkeeper** said now: “O Lord and Master since eternity, if this honoring from me, which is also outwardly, as I can clearly see now, is not pleasing to You, then everything should immediately be arranged differently.”

[18] **I** said: “Just leave everything as it is now, for the fishes are well prepared and will this time also taste us well in golden and silver platters, and the wine also. But leave it out next time.”

[19] The innkeeper was satisfied with this, and we began to partake of the morning meal.

24. THE PROPHET SCHOOL



URING the meal, the innkeeper asked Me if he should not secretly let the doctor know that I was here.

[2] **I** said: “Then you would make a useless effort, because he and his wife traveled over the countryside and will only come home in a couple of days. When they will come to you, you can relate to them about all the things that happened here during their absence. But now we will continue to eat and drink undisturbed.”

[3] Then we cheerfully ate and drank, as well as the innkeeper and his healed son, and they continuously praised the good taste of the noble fishes.

[4] **The innkeeper** could not keep a good remark to himself, for he said: “O Lord and Master, certainly the fishes that were first created in the waters of the Earth must also have tasted better than the ones that were procreated among each other, because these noble fishes were actually not procreated, but newly created by You, o Lord and Master, and therefore they also taste so extremely good.”

[5] **I** said: “Yes, yes, you could be right in this. And in the same manner, also the word that comes from My mouth is more powerful and more active than when it is spoken out by the prophets. But their words can be strengthened in every person to the same power when through action they are well prepared in the will and the heart of man.

[6] My word is already Life in itself and makes everyone alive who hears it with a willing heart, because then Life, which is the basis of all life, passes directly into the life of man. The word of the prophet however, is only a trustful signpost and shows man how he can come to the living word out of My mouth and by that can pass into the life of the spirit.

[7] I say to you all: finally, everyone will have to be instructed by God in his heart, for he who will not be finally instructed by the Father or by God’s Spirit in Me on the way of the pure love for Me and his fellowman, does not come to Me, the Son of the eternal

Love, which is the eternal Light, the Way, the Truth and the Life itself, because I am in Myself the wisdom of the Father. Although you do not understand all this now completely, but you will understand it when after My ascension you will be reborn in the Spirit out of Me. For this is the living Spirit of all truth that completely lives eternally in Itself, and It will lead you into all wisdom. So you were right when you said that the newly created fishes were incomparably tasting better than those that were procreated later among themselves.”

[8] Then **the innkeeper** said: “O Lord and Master, I have heard many things about the former prophet school, which was especially very common during the time of the judges, and which also continued to exist after that during the time of the kings unto nearly our time. But still, I was never able to clearly discover of what their lessons and exercises actually consisted. But from the time that someone became a prophet according to the full truth, the Spirit of Jehovah spoke unmistakably through his mouth, which was also proven through the acts of several great prophets.

[9] Of what did those lessons and exercises of a prophet school consist actually?”

[10] **I** said: “Listen, My friend, the things that happened during that time – only in all kinds of correspondences as preparation of this present time – stands now fulfilled before you. In that school the judges and priests, who were awakened in the spirit, accepted, in the manner of Aaron, children who were already since their birth educated in a pure and good manner by God-fearing parents, and of course especially boys who were above all physically completely healthy and strong. There they first had to be skilled in reading, counting and writing. After that, they were well instructed in the Scripture, namely in the books of Moses, and then also in the geography and ethnology of the Earth as far as it was known by men.

[11] At the same time they were carefully urged not to only know God’s commandments but also to keep them as strictly as possible out of their free will and to make decisions on their own. Also,

according to their age and degree of spiritual development they were exposed to a lot of tests and trials, so that inwardly they would come to the living conviction to know how much their strength had already increased to resist the whole world and its enticements.

[12] They especially had to be protected against laziness, which is the mother of all other sins and evils, and therefore they were also urged to do all kinds of physical work that was adjusted to their physical strength.

[13] Once they were grown up and strong in self-denial and gained victory over themselves, they were guided to their inner self through the science of correspondences. By this science they came to the living faith and obtained an unbendable will in union with God's will which they knew well and which they also observed precisely since already their childhood. So they also were already capable to perform many signs because their own will became one with God's will, and their faith as a true, living light from the Heavens did not allow anymore doubt in their enlightened hearts.

[14] Once all this had come within the true and living order, they became filled with God's Spirit through their living faith and their will that was unified with God's will in all their actions, everyone according to his own individual capabilities. Through that, their inner sight received a wider range of view, and so they foresaw also future things and events in corresponding images that they then wrote down for the later generations.

[15] Whoever acquired this condition in which he had visions, did also acquire the inner living word in his deepest inner being and heard thus the voice of Jehovah in himself, and that was the Word of God that the prophet announced to the people as it were from the mouth of God, and in fact had to announce because he was urged by the Spirit of God that was prevailing in him. Look, this is how the school of the prophets was, and in the manner that I have described it, men were formed in a real and true school of life to become prophets.”

25. THE TRUE PROPHETS



UT it happened also often that pious men, who always firmly believed in God and loved Him with all their heart, were awakened to become true prophets, also without first having frequently visited such school. So Moses and Aaron were great prophets themselves, although they were not trained in any school for this, because their faith, their heart that was dedicated to God and God Himself were their school. Also Elijah and Jonah, Joshua and Samuel became true prophets without any preceding school, because God Himself was their Master and their school.

[2] Also the patriarchs were mostly seers and prophets without school, for only God, to whom they adhered and whom they believed without doubting, was their school where He revealed His will to them. And even in this time there were seers and prophets who were not trained in the school for seers and prophets, because God looks always only at the heart of men and not at the school where someone attained to such or such ability.

[3] Look at these My disciples. None of them has ever seen a prophet school, and still, many of them will perform greater things than all the old seers and prophets, for only I am their Master and their school, and this is how it will be and remain until the end of times of this Earth.

[4] Although many schools will be erected in the future, out of which a countless number of false teachers and prophets will arise, but only very few true prophets according to God's will.

[5] Truly I say to you: from now on, only the one who will believe in Me, love Me above all and his fellowman as himself and who will actively follow My teaching, will become a seer and prophet. Therefore, not everyone who believes and calls out: 'Lord, Lord,' will enter My Kingdom, but only the one who will do My will, which is clearly expressed in My teaching.

[6] Therefore, also you should not be simply and solely empty hearers of My word, but you should act directly according to it, then you will receive in yourselves the true Kingdom of God.

But do not ever expect that the Kingdom of God, which is a Kingdom of the inner life, will come to men with outer signs and outer splendor and magnificence, for it is in you. Whoever will seek it in himself in the manner that I have shown you and does not find it in this manner, will search it in vain in the whole world and all stars.

[7] Thus the path to the true, living Kingdom of God is very narrow and often overgrown by all kinds of thorn-bushes. Humility and self-denial are their name. Worldly people can absolutely not walk on it.

[8] But the one who believes in Me and keeps My commandments, will not be hurt at his feet by the thorns on the path to God's Kingdom. Only a serious beginning is difficult. But when the seriousness remains and when it will not be weakened by all kinds of worldly reflections, the entire attainment of God's Kingdom is very easy, because for the one who always strives in full earnest for God's Kingdom in himself, will My yoke be soft and the burden that I give him to carry will be light, and to the serious seekers of the true Kingdom of God I will always call aloud in their heart: 'Come all to Me, you who are tired and burdened. I Myself am coming to meet you for already more than half way and want to strengthen and refresh you fully!

[9] To those however who will only call to Me 'Lord, Lord,' but are mostly concerned and focused on purely worldly things, and are only casually striving to that which is of the Kingdom of God, I will say: 'Why do you, worldly people, call to Me, and why do you shout? My heart has not yet known you. Let that about which you are concerned now also give you the help that you desire.' Truly I say to you: such people will on this side probably never find the true and living Kingdom of God in themselves, and they will be bad teachers, seers and prophets for their fellowmen, and on the other side it will be for such half-dead souls incomparably much more difficult to seek and to find the Kingdom of God in themselves.

[10] Therefore, let everyone work as long as the day lasts, because

when the night will come, it will hardly be possible to work. Did you, My friend, also understand what I have said now?"

[11] **The innkeeper said:** "Yes, Lord and Master over everything, I thank You for this lesson from my deepest inner life. Now the situation about the old prophet school is completely clear to me. But at the same time I ask You also when I – more seriously than it has been the case until now – will walk upon the narrow and thorny path to God's Kingdom, that You would mercifully like to come to meet me already from the first step, and help me, so that during the time that I continue my way on the narrow and thorny path of life, I would not become tired, discouraged and impatient."

26. FOLLOWING THE LORD



SAID: "That which you have now asked Me, I have already done now, and therefore you will be able to continue your way easily, because for whom My life of light shines will on his way not easily stumble upon a stone anymore and he will know how to avoid the thorns. The one who walks with Me, will have a well passable way everywhere. However, the one who walks without Me to the Kingdom of God, which is the inner kingdom of life and all truth, will have a long, narrow and very thorny way to go through, as this was the case with many old wise men of all people on Earth, and which will also be and remain the case in the future.

[2] From now on it will be easy for you, as well as for a lot of those who saw and heard Me and who completely believe in Me. But their descendants will attain to the Kingdom of God only by their faith. Whoever sees and hears Me, believes easily and can also live and act easily according to My word. But he who in the future will not see Me anymore physically will have it more difficult to attain to the true, living Kingdom of God, for he must believe what the messengers who are send out will tell him about Me.

[3] However, if he willingly accepts what he hears in his believing

heart, and will feel true joy because of the truth that he heard, then soon the baptism of the Spirit from Me will come over him, and then he will see the opened gate to God's Kingdom. From that point on, also for those who were no witness of My presence now, the way to God's Kingdom will be easy.

[4] But rejoice, now that you know all that – about the fact that God determined it already from the first beginning. And when you will relate to the people about Me and My Kingdom, then tell them what I have told you now, but above all, make them understand that My Kingdom is not of this world, but that it is the inner Kingdom of all truth and all life in the deepest inner-self of man. Whoever has found it in himself and has entered into it through his living faith and active love, has conquered the world, the judgment and death, and will constantly have eternal life.

[5] Although human reasoning thinks that the things that I have told you now are foolishness, nevertheless it is the highest wisdom of all life in God. It will be good for the one who will not be offended by it.

[6] No one can know all the things that lie hidden in man and that are necessary for his life, except the spirit that is and abides in the deepest inner self of man. And so, not any worldly wise man knows who God Himself is and what is in Him, but only God's Spirit that penetrates all His depths.

[7] However, when the spirit in man is not awakened as the true light of life, it is dark in man and he does not know himself, but when through faith in Me and through the love for Me and fellowman the spirit in man is awakened and enlightened to a bright light, the spirit thoroughly penetrates the whole man, and then man can see what is in him and he knows himself. And he who knows himself, knows God also, because the true and eternal spirit of life in man is not a human spirit, but a godly Spirit in man, otherwise man would not be an image of God.

[8] If you have well understood this, we will now, after having been strengthened in body and spirit, leave our table and begin our trip to Galilee.”

[9] They all assured Me that they well understood it and they thanked Me for this lesson.

[10] Yet, the innkeeper was asking if I would not prefer to stay in his house until noon.

[11] But I said to him: “Look, everything in this world has its time, thus also to come, to stay and to go. And I know where still today a big work is waiting for Me, and therefore I must go to the place where that work is waiting for Me. Besides, in 1 hour a big caravan of businessmen from Jericho will come in to your place, and then you will have much to do. The businessmen will be able to tell you many things about Me. Tell them also that I was here, but do not tell them which way I took.”

[12] The innkeeper assured Me once more that he strictly would observe everything what he had recognized as My will and thanked Me once more for the good things I did for him. And I gave a sign to the disciple to break up.

[13] Then we really stood up and went on our way. The innkeeper and his healed son escorted Me for more than 1,000 paces and then they returned back home with full of good memories.

27. THE FRUITFUL BLESSING IN A SMALL VILLAGE IN SAMARIA



WHEN the innkeeper came home, **his wife** said on a sulking tone to him: “Why did you not call me with the other children, so that I also, together with the other children could have properly said goodbye to that wonderful Savior?”

[2] **The innkeeper** said: “Woman, if that were necessary, then the Savior Himself would surely have called you, but since it was really not necessary, you were not called because of your little unbelief. And if you had come to know the Savior more closely, then soon the whole city would have known about His presence, which He did not want, and so it is good that He Himself let it all happen that way. Soon, when our doctor will come home again and who will certainly visit us, you will soon enough hear who that

wonderful Savior in fact was.

[3] But take care now to prepare everything, for in about ½ hour a considerable caravan of businessmen will come in to our place, as the really all-knowing Savior has announced me beforehand, and then we will have much to do. Thus see to it that everything in the kitchen will be prepared.”

[4] When the woman heard that, she went hastily to the kitchen and put all her male and female helpers to work, because now she believed what the innkeeper told her about what I announced to him.

[5] When all kinds of food, which were usually served to businessmen, were almost completely ready to be eaten, the caravan that was announced by Me arrived. Being extremely surprised they asked how the innkeeper could have known this time beforehand that they would arrive at that time.

[6] They still talked a lot about this after that, and the businessmen understood soon how the innkeeper knew the time of their arrival. Then several businessmen, who already heard about Me before, believed in Me.

[7] Meanwhile we quietly traveled on, and around noon we came close to a village that was still located in Samaria. Around the village there were many fruit trees, mostly figs, apples and peaches, and the disciples liked to satiate themselves a little with these fruits.

[8] When we came fully into the village, the disciples asked to the few present villagers if they could pluck some of the fruits.

[9] **The villagers said:** “That is surprising. Do you Jews want to eat fruit from us Samaritans?”

[10] **The disciples said:** “It is true that we are Jews, but we are not Pharisees who hate you, and therefore we gladly would like to eat the fruits of your trees – if you want to give them to us – and we also want to pay you for them.”

[11] **Then the villagers said:** “Just eat as much as you like. However, money we will not accept from you, for we also did not ask money from God when He blessed our fruit trees.”

[12] Then the disciples went to them and ate according to their desire, and the more they ate, the fuller the trees became.

[13] **The villagers** soon noticed this, went to the disciples and said: “How do you actually eat the blessing of our trees? We noticed very clearly that our trees are not only not losing any fruits, but the trees become also visibly full, so much so that their branches and twigs can hardly bear the weight. Do you not notice that, since you eat the fruits so indifferently? It is a clear and really obvious miracle.”

[14] **Then the apostle Andreas** said: “What you see, we see also. However, not we who are eating are causing this, but your unselfish neighborly love does that. We are strangers for you and you hospitably admitted us to eat without payment the sweet fruits of your fruit trees of which you troublesomely have to take care in this region. That was pleasing to God the Lord, and therefore He has now clearly visibly blessed your fruit trees before our and your eyes because of the friendship and love that you have shown to us.

[15] It is true that this happens only seldom in this time, and it happens seldom because it is also extremely seldom that friendship and love is given to foreign travelers without they have to pay for it. For no matter where you go and expect a friendly service from someone, it is done against payment, but out of pure neighborly love it is done as seldom as such blissful miracle of God, as you can see now before your eyes.

[16] So remain continuously faithful in the practice of unselfish neighborly love, and love God by keeping His commandments, then you will never have to complain about any lack of God’s blessing. God remains always and eternally the same, only men are changeable, they forget Him in their worldly intoxication and consider His precepts as a product of pure human cleverness and will do then whatever their reason thinks is good. With such faith and such way of doing according to the worldly belief, God does not look anymore with His eye of mercy and love to men who have forgotten Him almost completely, but with His eye of wrath.

[17] Under these circumstances in the life of men, divine blissful

miracles are becoming very easily and surely extremely seldom occurrences on this Earth among men. But where there are still men who are still believing in God without doubting, who keep His commandments and who still have not defiled and polluted their hearts and souls with the evil greed for the worldly mammon, God shows Himself before them always as an extremely good Father who blesses His children, as it also happened during the time of the patriarchs. But to the children of this world who do not care about Him, He shows Himself as a relentless judge and He chastises them with all kinds of troubles, and His blessing right hand is not stretched out over worldly people.

[18] If you, dear, simple inhabitants of this small village will take that at heart, you will also easily understand why God has obviously blessed your good will.”

[19] **Then an elder of the village said:** “Friend, you have spoken here very wisely in the name of Jehovah, and thereby you also have shown that you are not a follower of the evil teaching of the Pharisees. You have completely the same attitude as we have and you are truly right in every respect. I am already an old citizen of this village, and I know that its inhabitants are still strict followers of the precepts of Moses, by whom God has spoken. And the service that we have given you on your request, and which we did with gladness and with all our heart, we have already given to many other people who traveled through our little village and who were hungry and thirsty, but such miraculous blessing we have never experienced, although I thereby must honestly confess that despite all our generosity we never had to complain about any lack of God’s blessing. But, as I said, we have never seen such remarkable blessing from God.

[20] So there seems to be a very special circumstance here that for maybe very wise reasons you cannot or may not reveal to us. But so be it. This is now such a striking miracle that no one can deny, and we do not wish to ask any further questions to know its actual reason. Nevertheless, one thing attracts my attention: that One of you who waits for you on the road over there did not want to taste

any of our fruits. Is He perhaps an arch-Jew who does not want to accept anything from Samaritans, or does He not like the fruit trees that grow here in our place?”

[21] **Andreas said:** “Friend, He is neither one or the other. But he who will come to know Him, will have learned more than the whole world is ever capable to understand. That is also why He is the Lord and Master of us all.”

[22] **These words of Andreas were attracting the attention of the elder, and therefore he said (the elder):** “Was my opinion not correct when I said that with this striking miracle, apart from the special mercy from above, there is still a very special secret reason? And that secret reason can certainly be found in that Man, whom you called your Lord and Master. Is my opinion correct?”

[23] **Andreas said:** “Friend, if you have that impression, then go to Him and talk to Him, for we know what we have to do and say, but He is the Lord and can do and say whatever He wills.”

28. THE REASON WHY THE INHABITANTS ARE BLESSED



AFTER hearing this, the elder went directly to Me and said: “Listen, Lord and Master of these men, who have satiated themselves with the fruits of our trees. Why did You actually not also want to satiate Yourself with the ripe fruits of our trees together with those who certainly are Your disciples and servants?”

[2] **I said:** “Because I did not so much desire to eat those sweet fruits of the trees, but rather I desired the much sweeter fruits of your heart and good will, for if someone does to one of My true disciples and servants a true, unselfish service of love, I accept this as if he did it for Me.

[3] **I am with God and God is with Me, and those who are with Me are thus also with God, and God is with them. God is also with everyone who really believes in Him, keeps His commandments and loves Him above all and his fellowman as himself. If someone does not love his fellowman without payment – no matter if he is**

someone from his own country or a stranger – and does not help him out of one or the other distress while he can see him as one that looks like him as an image of God, how can he love God whom he does not see?

[4] That is why true, unselfish love for fellowman is one with the love for God, and God rewards his love already in this world and will once on the other side in His eternal Kingdom reward it even more with eternal life. Truly, not even 1 drink of water that you have given with a good heart to a thirsty person will remain unrewarded to you.”

[5] **The elder** said: “Lord and Master, from Your words I conclude that You are really a Lord and Master. We refreshed the travelers already a lot of times, for we have a common spring that contains very fresh water. We also often would have liked to refresh a tired traveler with a cup of wine, if we would have that, but our region is meager and the vineyard grows not well here. To buy wine we have neither money nor flocks of the quantity that is required for that, and thus we only can assist the many poor, tired travelers with what we scantily have. May therefore the dear, great and almighty Father in Heaven accept our will as the work itself.”

[6] **I** said: “That is also what He has done for an already long time, and that is why you have never known exceptional distress. And in the future He will, in a still more remarkable way, care for your present well being and even more for the salvation of your souls. You can be absolutely sure about that, because whoever, like you, trusts Him, He will never leave. Even if He often does not help him right away and clearly visibly, He nevertheless will not let him go down completely.

[7] Because God tries everyone first, before He will clearly help him. If after all his trials, he has kept his faithfulness and love for Him, then comes suddenly, before anyone can notice it, the always-clear help from God, and then His blessing remains always with His faithful ones. Remember this, all of you, and keep in mind: God has tested you to the salvation of your souls. You have well endured the test, and therefore He came now to you with

an abundance of His rewarding blessings, and His blessings will become your permanent possession.

[8] You do not know Me and you do not know who I am, but the time will come, and is actually already there, that you will shout: ‘Hail to the Son of David, who has come to us in the name of the Lord!’ Have you not heard what happened 2 years ago in Samaria?”

[9] **The elder said:** “Lord and Master – and as You are saying Yourself now, lineal descendant of the great king of the Jews – we come only seldom into the city of Samaria, which is more than ½ day of travel away from here, and that is also why we know little of what is happening and what is going on there. However, from travelers we have heard that during the time that You mentioned, unbelievable and miraculous things must have happened by a newly arisen great prophet. They say that He gave the Samaritans also all kinds of comforting teachings, but some priests and also other worldly people took offence at Him. If this was well founded or, which is more probable, unfounded, we could in our simplicity not evaluate, and we could not make up an opinion of a matter that is unknown to us.

[10] But recently there was something else that happened to us, which we all witnessed – like the miraculous multiplication of the fruit trees today – and that was the following: around noon, only 2 men came to us. According to their clothing and language they were from Jerusalem, and they asked us some bread and also a few ripe fruits of our trees, which we also gladly gave them according to our capability. When they were strengthened by it, I also took the liberty to ask them who they were, from where they came, whereto they wanted to travel further, where their homeland was and what kind of work they were doing.

[11] And they said: ‘Not so long ago we were very simple and mostly severely suppressed servants and helpers, and now and then, when we did not have any fixed job, we also were only badly rewarded day laborers in Jerusalem. But then a Man from Galilee, full of godly power, might and wisdom came to Jerusalem, who

taught the whole people with powerful words and who performed great and never heard-of signs. And a lot of people began to believe in Him, to great vexation of the Pharisees and scribes whose evil attempts to deceive the people were revealed by Him without any shyness, and He sharply called them to account as someone who has power.

[12] This Man who was sent by God into the world, who had also continuously a mighty archangel as companion, accepted also us as His disciples because we believed in Him completely. He gave us wisdom and all kinds of power to heal the sick of body and soul, and to drive out evil spirits from men, and poison or poisonous animals cannot harm us, even if we would be forced to walk over scorpions and vipers with bare feet.

[13] Our most important task and activity is that we as His messengers will proclaim in name of the God-Man that was sent by God, the coming of the Kingdom of God on Earth among the people, whether they are Jews or gentiles, and that we should tell them that He personally as the Messiah, who was announced by the prophets, has now come into this world to save them from the old and extremely hard yoke of sin, the lie and the deceit, which are the judgment and the eternal death.’

[14] I asked those 2 of what that new teaching consisted, by which the Kingdom of God would come on Earth among the people. And look, then they talked just like You and also as one of Your disciples has now talked to us. And we were of the opinion that they were telling the truth, and we believed their words completely.”

29. THE COMPLETE HEALING OF THE POSSESSED PERSON



AND there was someone among us who was insane for already 30 years, and now and then he was lost in the woods. There he was then tormented by the evil spirits in such a way that he often cried and roared terribly, and even the

wildest animals were hastily running away from him. When he then came back from the woods to us, he was calm, and when he was asked what he had done in the woods, he never could remember anything about it.

[2] This very unfortunate man was in the village, just during the time when those 2 men visited us, and on their request we let them be acquainted with him. Then they laid their hands on him and commanded the evil spirits in the name of the Son of God Jesus to go out of that man and leave his body forever. But out of the man, who was tormented such a long time by the evil spirits, they cried out so loud like an army of soldiers: ‘Jesus Zebaoth Jehovah, who was born in the flesh from a lovely young woman in a sheep-fold in Bethlehem, and who grew up in the old Nazareth in Galilee to become a strong Man, we know, and to His almightiness we are also subjected because it is not possible for us to resist it, but you we do not know and we also will not obey you.’

[3] Then the 2 men called very seriously in their spirit on their Jesus for help. After this call we heard like a mighty thunder from above, and then the evil spirits left the tormented man suddenly, and we saw them hastily swirling away like a big swarm of black flies, and the man, who before that time had been tormented for so many years, became then completely healthy, and in that condition he is still living among us in the village. If You maybe want to see him, Lord and Master of Your disciples, I can let him bring here.

[4] Look, this was a rare occurrence in our very remote village. And now I gladly would like to know if you all are perhaps also messengers of that mighty Jesus Zebaoth Jehovah from Nazareth, because you speak wisely, just like those 2 men, and also, because of your presence, unmistakable miracles happened to our fruit trees.”

[5] **I said: “Let first that healed man be brought here, then it will appear who I am and who My disciples are.”**

[6] After these words of Mine the healed man was immediately taken out of a house where he was working, and was brought to Me, and he asked Me what I wanted him to do for Me.

[7] **But I** said to him: “I really do not want you to do any service for Me, but I can do a good service to you, and therefore I have let you come to Me. Not long ago you were set free by 2 men from your tormenting spirits?”

[8] **The one who was questioned** said: “Yes My Lord, the evil spirits have left me, thanks to God on high. But still, a certain physical weakness and the ever increasing fear for death, which comes unmistakably near at my age, does not want to leave me, despite all my praying and trusting in God, and therefore, nothing in the world can make me happy anymore. Look, that is also a big and sad evil, especially for someone who has grown old with only evil afflictions. If You perhaps can free me from that, then You would of course do me a very big and beneficial service.”

[9] **I** said: “Yes, My friend, I can do that from My very own perfect power, and I do not need the help of any other being for that. And so I want that you become now immediately as strong and powerful as you have never been before, and so let that meaningless, foolish fear for the death of your body leave you also forever, which is actually no death but only a clear light to the true, eternal life.”

[10] **When I** spoke out these words over that man, he suddenly became filled with the power of a young man, and his fear for death left him immediately and entirely, so that he began to shout from sheer joy and began to thank Me at the top of his voice for this healing, and he praised God who had given Me such power.

[11] **Then the elder** came to Me again and said in full amazement and awe: “O Lord and Master, I have the feeling that I know now who You actually are.”

[12] **I** said: “If you have that feeling, then tell what you feel.”

[13] **And the elder** said: “Lord and Master, forgive me my boldness, that I am speaking with You. From everything that I have heard now, it seems that You are Jesus Zebaoth Jehovah, because no mortal human being since the first beginning of the world could ever say: ‘I do this to you from my very own perfect power,’ upon which he then would precisely accomplish in a

miraculous way what he wills and which he speaks out in very simple and well understandable words. Friend, You did not call to God or Jesus Zebaoth Jehovah: ‘Help Me’, but You said: ‘I want it from My very own perfect power.’

[14] Thus, what are You? You Yourself are the only true Jesus Zebaoth Jehovah. Do not cover any longer now Your face of the Messiah who is promised by the prophesies of the prophets, so that in You we can greet, love, glorify and praise the One that You are and to whom no one on Earth or in Heaven is equal. For if You are Jehovah Zebaoth – which I personally do not doubt in the least – all honor and worship belongs to You by us men who have recognized You from Your words and Your deeds.”

[15] **I said:** “What you want to do, do it in your heart, because every praise with the mouth has no value for Me. Profess only My name to your brothers also openly with the mouth and speak about My teaching and My deeds. Do according to My words, and act and live according to My teaching that My 2 messengers have announced to you, then I will profess you to My Father, and the one whom I will profess to My Father will have eternal life in himself.

[16] **But now we will continue our way again, because I still must show Myself to many who just like you believe already completely in Me and who also have a great and strong desire to see Me.”**

30. THE PROMISE AND THE BLESSING OF THE LORD FOR THE INHABITANTS OF THE MOUNTAIN VILLAGE



SHUS, stay with My teaching, then I also will stay with you in spirit, as I am also staying with all men who believe in Me and live and act according to My teaching, and with those who will, just like you, accept those in all love and kindness and give food and drink to those whom I have sent out to proclaim the gospel to all nations, that means the coming of God’s Kingdom on Earth, of what it consists and what its nature is.

[2] Because those whom I am sending out now are like the prophets, and the one who will do something good for a prophet in earthly respect, will also receive the reward of a prophet, which consists in the fact that I will be and remain with him in spirit, just as I am and remain with the prophet, and he will not lack any blessings from My part.

[3] Until now you troublesomely have cultivated the ground, which is very stony. And your lands, gardens and fields have produced a meager harvest, but you did not grumble and have thanked God also for that which is little. And for you He also has blessed that which is little, and it was sufficient for your need. And by your neighborly love it was also sufficient for the many strangers who came to you while they were hungry, thirsty and often also naked.

[4] Since you were faithful in that which is little, your soil – which surface area is truly not small – will from now on lose its very stony nature, and in the future you will receive rich harvests, and you will also need many servants. In short, the spirit that I will awaken in you, will teach you how you should maintain and cultivate your earthly fields and lands in the future.

[5] When your soil will be full of blessings, do then not become arrogant, but stay as you are now, then My blessings will also stay with you, naturally and spiritually. This is how it is and how it will stay, as you also will actively stay in My teaching.”

[6] After these words of Mine, all the inhabitants of the small mountain village who were present, threw themselves on their knees and thanked Me for the mercy that I had given them. The old man and the man who was completely healed could hardly speak because of their tears of gratefulness. But I ordered them to stand up and to cheerfully go to work, which they also did. Only the old man and the one who was healed stayed, and with a happy look they stared at Me and My disciples.

[7] **The healed one** said: “O what must these chosen disciples of Yours be happy, because they are continuously in Your presence, o Lord, and they can be a witness of all Your deeds

and teachings.”

[8] I said: “For this reason, later, when I no longer will be with them as a visible person, and will be there from where I came, they will also have to endure all the more heavy trials of life and all kinds of persecutions on the part of the world, because the world, as it is now, is blind and deaf. They will hate them because of My name, as they are also hating Me, because they have never known Me and will also not know Me, and so they will perish in their sins and cruel deeds.

[9] Look, then it will be easier for you in this world, although they will also often investigate about you to know if also you believe in Me and act and live according to My teaching.

[10] If they will ask you about it, then do not be scared and do also not think about what you will answer the questioners and tempters. At the moment you will need it, the right answer will surely be put in the mouth, and then not 1 tempter in 1,000 will be able to answer you back. I can also give you that complete assurance.”

[11] They were both reassured, and I gave the disciples a sign that it was time to travel on.

[12] Then the disciples prepared themselves to go, and I joined them, and with the speed of the wind we left the mountain village. Before the inhabitants of the village were able to look back we were already completely out of their sight, and this fast disappearance made some to think that we were ghosts, but the old man and the one who was healed explained to them who I was and that therefore everything was possible to Me.

[13] The next year when their stony fields were changing into flourishing agricultural land, their faith became still stronger, and from time to time I appeared visibly among them and strengthened them in their faith and their love, patience and meekness. For when they heard that I was crucified in Jerusalem and died on the cross, some of them became very frightened and began to doubt. Therefore it was necessary to go personally to them and show Myself as Lord and as conqueror of death. At these opportunities I comforted them and explained to them from the Scripture that all

this had to happen to Me, so that every soul who believes in Me would pass through the dark gate of death into eternal glory through which I went and where I already had been since eternity. I explained to them that the things which happened were done out of love for men, so that by their faith in Me and My incarnation they would become My true children, being equal to Me in everything, for the sake of their salvation, but also for the judgment over the evil world. After that, these inhabitants of the mountain village that became famous in a few years time, became true heroes in faith and in their actions.

31. THE LORD WITH HIS FOLLOWERS IN AN ANCIENT FOREST



WITHIN 1 hour we reached a dense forest through which the road to Galilee was going. It took more than 3 hours to walk through the forest, and there were no houses along the road.

[2] The disciples asked Me why such forest was not used by anyone.

[3] And I said to them: “Just be glad that in the Promised Land such a healthy forest still exists which did not yet fall as vile offering to human greed. In this forest you still can find places where the honey flows as a little brook from the trees, for in these kinds of forests the bees that prepare the honey are still abundantly present.

[4] I created also all kinds of animals that are firstly as necessary for the natural existence of the Earth as the eye is necessary for men to see, and secondly they are absolutely necessary for the continuous and independent development of the souls on this Earth, of which at other opportunities I have told you extensively about its essence, and which I also have shown to you by the opening of your inner sight. So you will understand that all those different animals must also have a place to live next to men on this Earth, because they are necessary for the final development of men

according to My order. And for this reason such big and dense forests are also necessary on different places on Earth. Apart from that, there are also still thousands of other purposes.

[5] They are mainly the first vessels for taking up the numberless nature spirits who are receiving their first incarnation¹ that is already separated from others by an ordered intelligence and are reaching a certain ripeness to such degree that they can then pass over to the more intelligent and freer animal life, and all this I have already shown to you because I want that you know all the secrets of God's Kingdom on Earth.

[6] As long as such forests on Earth exist in sufficient numbers and the nature spirits which continuously come down from all the stars to the Earth and those that are climbing up from the Earth while they are developing themselves, can be taken up in such forests where they can find their well-ordered accommodation, then you will not see all too heavy stormy natural disasters and all kinds of epidemical diseases to arise, but once the covetous pursuit of profit of men will violate too much the forests, it will also be hard for the people to live and to exist on this Earth, and more heavily so where the thinning out of the forests will have the upper hand. This you also can remember to warn the people on time for such thoughtless undertakings.

[7] Look, in the earliest times of men on this Earth they did not know about any carpentry houses and still less about cemented strongholds. Such forests served men also as their habitation, and they reached in those natural living habitations a very high age in complete health. In the north of Asia as well as Europe, and still other bigger and smaller continents – also in the southern hemisphere – there are still nowadays in natural respect very strong and healthy people living in the forests. So this forest is not as frightening and useless as the nearsighted reason of men imagines. If you have understood this, then be happy that we have still found such really healthy ancient forest.”

¹ Envelopment with a body.

[8] While I was explaining this to the disciples about the dense forest, we came in a more open space in the forest, which was surrounded by old cedars. And there was a cedar that was hollow and which contained a great number of bees that prepared so much honey that this – because the bees could not eat it all – was flowing everywhere abundantly from the holes and cracks of the mighty tree. As a result, somewhat lower than the tree and at some distance away from it, a pit as a small pond could be seen that was filled with the best of honey, and very soon the disciples discovered a little brook that was flowing from that true honey pond to the right far into the forest.

[9] **Peter** said: “This is truly still a little piece of the old Canaan, where honey and milk was flowing out into brooks. But it is rather amazing that the always insatiable greed of men has until now not discovered this true lake of honey. Lord and Master, it is a pity that we have no bread with us, otherwise we could very well eat here bread with honey.”

[10] **Then Philip** said: “I have a loaf of bread with me, but we are now about 40 people. Therefore, each one of us will only receive a little piece.”

[11] **Now the disciples of John** said: “We also still have a couple of loafs of bread that we already bought in Jericho. So it could be, although it is scanty, that there is enough bread for all of us.”

[12] **I** said: “If you are already hungry, then divide the 3 loafs of bread among yourselves and eat.”

[13] This is what the disciples did, and they gave Me also a big piece.

[14] On this, I blessed the bread and they multiplied so much that we all had more than enough. Then we went to sit around the pond, dipped the bread into the honey, and the disciples – more especially Judas Iscariot – could not have enough of the sweet bread.

[15] This meal lasted for about ½ hour, and then **I** said: “Now we all have eaten enough bread with honey and it is time to leave this place in the forest that is all too sweet for you and try to arrive in

Galilee still before sunset, because here we still are in Samaria.”

[16] **Peter said:** “Lord, truly, it would be good to stay here for a couple of days and to rest a little. Here we also would be safe for the often-troublesome intrusiveness of the people, for no one has discovered this place before us. This is sure because the honey river is still so full that it is overflowing.”

[17] **I said:** “It is true that no one has discovered this place in the forest, but several bears of this forest have discovered it already a long time ago, and these will not wait long before they will come. If you want to spend the night around the honey river with these kinds of inhabitants, then you surely can spend the night here, but I will not stay around in the presence of these bears, and I do not want to keep them under control with the power of My will and cut down their meal.”

[18] When the disciples heard that several bears would come, whom most of them disliked very much, they were immediately willing to travel on. Everyone dipped his last piece of bread still one more time in the honey and stood then quickly up from the ground, and we left that place and continued our way. But first we had to make way for quite a distance, because before, in order to come to our honey river we had to go uphill from the passable road.

[19] After awhile we reached with some effort the passable road again that was still running through the forest, and there we moved on again with the speed of the wind, and in this way we reached already in ½ hour the land of Galilee.

THE LORD IN GALILEE

32. IN THE INN OF THE COUNTRYSIDE



AFTER the honey meal, the disciples were very thirsty, and when we came at an inn in the countryside they wanted to drink.

[2] The innkeeper apologized that besides some water from the rainwater spring and sheep milk he had no other drinks. The disciples were satisfied with the sheep milk that the innkeeper possessed abundantly, and they quenched their thirst with that.

[3] After the disciples had quenched their thirst, the so-called and already known Jewish Greeks and also the disciples of John who all carried much money with them, asked for the price of the milk.

[4] **The innkeeper** said: “For those of you who are Jews, it is free, for it is my custom that for a Jew who asks for the first time in my inn for a refreshment, he receives it without payment, but the Greeks have to pay for the refreshment, and that is 1 coin.”

[5] Although they were Jews, **the Jewish Greeks** said: “Friend, it is true that we wear Greek clothing, but we are circumcised, and thus we are Jews and no Greeks. But this does not matter. You have charged such a cheap price that we want to and also will pay the price not only once but triple, because the milk of your sheep was fresh and good and we have quenched our thirst, and therefore you have charged too little. Here, accept the money.”

[6] Then one of the Jewish Greeks gave him a silver coin, which had the value of 100 pennies.

[7] **The innkeeper** apologized that he could not change such coin and said: “Because you are also Jews, as you claim to be and which I believe completely, you do not have to pay. Therefore I do not accept any coins from you, and certainly not a big coin.”

[8] Then I said to the innkeeper: “He who counts such low prices as you do, commits no sin if he accept what the guests out of free will want to offer him.”

[9] After My remark, **the innkeeper** accepted the coin and said:

“Then one will pay for the other. Although this is no road through which many caravans are traveling, because the travelers are afraid of the dense forest where all kinds of animals of prey are living and which often make it difficult for the travelers, especially in the winter, but in spring and in summer there are nevertheless travelers coming along this old road – of which they say that it was built by the Philistines – and there surely will be several among them who could very well use a free treatment.

[10] O, if I only had a good spring with my farming, which otherwise is quite big, then there would be no lack of guests at certain times, but all my rainwater springs have often only just enough of more or less drinking water that I need for my business. That is why I only can seldom accommodate strangers. Look, this day is almost finished, and I gladly would like to accommodate you for the night because the next little place, a little village, is about 2 hours of walking distance from here, but I have no wine, almost no bread and no salt. We truly live here only from the milk of our sheep and goats and their smoked flesh. Also chickens are progressing well here and lay many eggs, but I continuously have to take well-armed and courageous shepherds into service, so that my flocks will not suffer too much damage from the animals of prey. However, if you can satisfy with my house food, then you can stay here for the night. I have received enough money from you and will not make a new bill for you tomorrow. My wife and my 5 already grown-up daughters can prepare our house food very well.”

[11] **I said:** “Friend, we will not stay for the night here but in the nearby little village. But since I am a Master in finding pure and living springs, I want to walk around your house to see if I cannot find a place where there may be a rich spring.”

[12] **The innkeeper said:** “O Friend, then Your work will be in vain, like also several water experts have done here who searched for water in the whole wide region, and with all their instruments that could well detect the presence of a subterranean spring, they could not found such a spot. Truly, God will first have to create a

spring in this region, otherwise none will be found here, and around my house the least of all, for I with all my helpers have already turned everything upside down and have found nothing else than dead and dry stones.”

[13] **I** said: “Then all is needed is a little test. Maybe I will succeed better than you and all your water sensors?”

[14] **The innkeeper** said: “O Friend, You surely can try it, but I only have a weak faith.”

[15] **I** said: “This does not matter for the time being, because later you will come to have a stronger faith.”

[16] After that, I asked the innkeeper on which spot near to his house he wanted to have an abundant spring.

[17] **The innkeeper** said: “Friend, that also? Yes, if You would have something like Moses’ shepherd staff, then that 2 men height high, hard rock would be the most suitable spot. Like the rock in the desert had to give its water on the command of Moses when he put his staff into the rock, so this rock could do that also. But there is no Moses anymore and suchlike staff neither, and therefore our rock will surely never become a spring.”

[18] **I** said: “Friend, here right before you stands more than Moses and all prophets, and My will is mightier than your shepherd staff of Moses. Look, I will not hit the rock with a staff, I will not even touch it with one finger, and the rock will give out of itself for a long time so much pure and best drinking water that you and your descendants will never have a lack of water.”

[19] Then **I** turned to the rock and said: “I will that a whole brook full of pure and best water will begin to bubble up from you and will then continue to stream out for another 1,000 years, and that it will only dry up when dark heathens will trample down this place.”

[20] On these words of Mine a piece of the rock face came off at that same moment, and with a mighty bubbling there was such strong water stream that came out, that immediately a strong brook began to stream downwards from the rock into the lower valley, and it soon made a river bed for itself to continue its flow.

33. THE LORD MAKES HIMSELF KNOWN TO THE INNKEEPER



WHEN the innkeeper saw that, he was startled, and he did not know what to say.

[2] But I said: “Friend, how is your weak faith now?”

[3] Then **the innkeeper**, being still completely amazed, said: “O Friend, what concerns my faith in Your word, You can make me believe now whatever You want, and I will believe You. Truly, You must be a very mighty prophet, even greater than Moses and Elijah. Maybe You already have done great signs in many places to raise up again the shattered faith in the one true God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, and to awaken anew the ancient fear for God into the heart of men. But I live here completely isolated from everyone between the mountains, and I do not hear much of what there is and what is going on in the wide big world, and also the travelers who pass by now and then on this old road are only seldom interrupting their trip to stay in my place because of the formerly mentioned reasons, and so a lot of wonderful things might already have happened in the world of which nothing has still come to our ears. What are You actually doing at the head of these companions of Yours. What is Your actual purpose? For I have the impression that You are not only traveling around in the world to provide waterless regions with water.”

[4] I said: “You could be right in that, but I am surprised that you who are a Galilean yourself seem not to have heard anything about Me until now. Several years ago you often came in Nazareth, in which city I have worked as a carpenter for a long time with the old Joseph whom is well known to you. And there you have heard all kinds of things about Me. Do you not remember all that?”

[5] Now **the innkeeper**, being astonished¹, said: “You – are You that carpenters’ son about whom the Nazarenes have told all kinds of tales and fables and whom they declared to be a half insane

¹ ‘being astonished’ – literal original text: ‘who made big eyes’.

strange person? Yes, yes, about that carpenter I have heard so many things several years ago, but most of it was only about His childhood, because as a matured young Man and later as a Man He seemed to have kept only very little of His child capabilities. He spoke very little and He also did not perform any more signs, and then they also did not care much about Him anymore.

[6] So, You are the youngest son of the old Joseph of whom he had high expectations, but in whom he himself finally began to doubt because You became almost completely mute and performed hardly any more signs. Ah, now a lot of things become clear to me, which I formerly would have never believed. But now I gladly would first like to hear from Your mouth what the purpose of Your roundtrip is, and only now I very much would like that you all would stay with me tonight.”

[7] I said: “Look, soon, when I will have returned from where I came, My disciples will be send out into the whole world and in My name they will proclaim to the people what they have learned from Me, and then the purpose of the roundtrip that I am making now will be made known.

[8] Whoever will believe in Me and My word and will act according to it, from his loins streams of living water will flow out, and he will thirst no more, for he will have the eternal life in the truth and in the spirit of all love from God in himself.

[9] It is easy to command a rock to let natural water flow out of it, but because the people have become in their mind and heart now much harder than this rock from which the water is streaming out at My word, it is much more difficult to bring the people to the point to let the water of life stream out of their loins – the water which is the eternal truth in God and which comes now to the people in the word.

[10] When it also will come to you in the word, then believe it and act accordingly, then you will become a spring in God’s Kingdom, with which many who thirst for the truth for the eternal life of their soul, will be able to refresh themselves. By that I have explained to you the purpose of My roundtrip.

[11] You also desired that I would stay in your house for the night that draws near quickly. However, that wish I cannot grant now, because look, the day will still last 1 hour, and I must work as long as the day lasts. Before sunset there is still today an important work that is waiting for Me, and that is why I must immediately travel on with My disciples. But remember what I have told you now, because the time will come soon that you, together with your whole family, will appreciate it more than all the treasures of the world.”

[12] Then I gave a sign to the disciples to break up and to continue our trip, and we prepared ourselves and moved on immediately.

[13] The innkeeper escorted us a couple of hundred paces, thanked Me for the miraculous good deed that I had done for him and he asked Me to return to him as soon as possible and to stay longer with him than this time.

[14] And I said to him: “Friend, as you see Me now, you will not see me again, but when you will be instructed by My disciples about Me and My will and will believe in My name, I will come to you in spirit and also stay with and in you. You still cannot understand this now, but when it will happen you also will understand it.”

[15] After these words, the innkeeper said good-bye and being in deep thoughts he returned home. We quietly continued our way over a free mountain ridge and looked in all directions at the very scenic environment.

[16] When the innkeeper came home soon, his whole personnel, about 40 people altogether, were looking with great amazement and astonishment at the rock out of which now the water was streaming out abundantly, and they asked the innkeeper who I actually was and how I could accomplish to let such pure and so much water stream out of the rock.

[17] Although the innkeeper told them everything he had seen and heard, his people did not understand anything about it.

[18] Except a **very simple shepherd** who brought a flock of sheep home and who drenched them immediately at the fresh spring,

said: “You guess, ask and search for all kinds of things, and the truth is so obvious here. Someone who can do something only through his word, which no human being can do, must be filled with God’s Spirit, for only God can accomplish something like that. And since God has given our house a more than great mercy with this, we should now also thank Him first and praise His most glorious name, and tomorrow we should go immediately to work down there, where the plain has already a very broad deepening of itself, and make a pond in which the water that streams from here can come together and where it will be easier for us to drench our flocks than here where the water streams too fast from the rock to the valley.”

[19] They all praised the shepherd because of his good idea and his advice, and some helpers took immediately pickaxes, shovels and axes, and in 1 hour time they achieved to make the water flow down to the formerly mentioned valley where it had to gather, and within a couple of days the whole valley, which consisted only of bare stones, was changed into a real lake about which later many travelers were extremely surprised because in former times they mainly avoided this region because there was lack of water in the summer.

[20] Soon many travelers came along that old road, and the innkeeper became soon so rich that instead of the former little inn that was hardly noticed, he built a large one, and he had always many guests. Many traveled also to that place because of the story of the miracle that was quickly spreading around, and they stayed then several days in that inn.

[21] The innkeeper became later also an important spreader of My gospel after he had been well instructed by My disciples.

[22] This is an addition of what is memorable to mention.

[23] And so we will return back to us.

34. THE HEALING OF THE 10 LEPERS



AFTER a little hour we came near a small village or market place, and there, 10 men came to us who suffered from a malicious leper disease. They all came from near Nazareth and had to stay already for a whole year in the open air because no one wanted to accommodate them in an inn, and also no doctor could help them.

[2] When they came very close to Me, **the 10** recognized Me and also some of My disciples. They stood still, raised their voice and said: “O Jesus, dear Master, we know You and Your godly power, have mercy on us, for we not only often suffer pains that are hardly bearable, but everyone flees away from our presence.”

[3] **I** said to them: “May your faith help you. Return now again to the little market place and show yourselves to a priest who is also a doctor (which the Jewish priests are usually imagining themselves to be), and he will give you a valid certificate for the world saying that you are now completely clean. But then go away and be useful to the people by the work of your hands, and commit no more sin, so that not something worse will happen to you than up to now, for it is the sin of lewdness that brings about such afflictions to the body. Now go, and do what I have commanded you.”

[4] Then the purified men went hastily back again to the market and went to a priest, showed themselves to him and asked him to give them a certificate.

[5] And the priest looked at them, saw that they were completely clean and gave them, in return of a little offering – as this was the custom – to each one of them a personal certificate that consisted of a small sheet of donkey’s skin that was made smooth and marked with a star.

[6] With that certificate they went then to an inn, and after they showed the mentioned certificate they were accepted as guests in the inn without any objection.

[7] **One of them** said however to his former fellow-sufferers:

“Listen, that dear Master Jesus of Nazareth has set us free from our serious affliction by His miraculous godly power. Therefore, I consider it as our first duty to turn around immediately, go to meet Him and express once more our thanks to Him.”

[8] **Then the others said:** “You are right, but the sun has already set and it starts to get dark, and He will not stand there now waiting outside of the market until we come back and express our thanks to Him orally. We thank Him in our heart, and He, who also knows what a person thinks, will not hold it against us if we will not go to meet Him to the place where He probable cannot be found anymore.”

[9] **But the one said:** “If the dear Master Jesus knows the thoughts of men also from a distance, as we have already experienced with Him, then He will also know that I will now return to the place where we were cleansed, to give Him there the honor that is due to Him – no matter if He will be there or not.”

[10] **The others said:** “You must do what seems good and right to you. We however think that we are not acting wrongly when we do what seems good and right to us.”

[11] **Then the 9 went into the inn, but the one returned to the place where he was cleansed and where I was still staying because of the pleasant evening. When he came to me, he felt great gladness that he could still meet Me at the same place where ½ hour ago he was cleansed of the malicious leper disease together with the other 9.**

[12] **At once he fell on his face before Me and praised God with a loud voice (the healed leper):** O Jesus, dear, good Master, Son of the living eternal God who are one with Him in nature and Being, and therefore can also do everything what the Father can do, I thank You and praise You because you have shown such great mercy to me and also to the others, my fellow-sufferers. Honor, glory and praise to You as much as to the Father in Heaven who has come in You, His Son, to us poor sinners to fulfill what He faithfully and openly has promised through the mouth of the patriarchs and prophets. O, may Your love, mercy and compassion remain with us always, and make, o Jesus, also the blind of spirit

to see that.”

[13] **I** said: “Stand up, because your great faith has helped you. You are a Samaritan and have recognized Me, and you have come and have given the honor to God as it is proper. Therefore, you also will remain in My love. But what about the other 9? Were they also not cleansed just like you? And if they were cleansed, then why did they not come with you to give honor to God, just like you? Is there no one else except you who turned around to give honor to Him who made him healthy? So a stranger knows better what is due to God than those who let themselves be honored as children of God. Therefore, that honor will soon be taken away from the children and be given to the strangers.”

[14] The Samaritan kneeled again before Me on the ground and **I** said once more with friendly words to him: “Stand up completely now and go to the inn, for your faith has helped you. However, say also to your companions, who are Jews, what I have said to you.”

[15] Then the healed one stood up completely and went to the inn, and there he met his companions who were eating heartily bread and wine.

[16] When he came to them, they asked him immediately if he still was able to find Me somewhere.

[17] And he told them very seriously and openly what I had said to him.

[18] Then the 9 were overtaken by fear that they could fall back again into the leper disease. Then they did not eat and drink anymore and they regretted that they also did not do what the Samaritan had done.

[19] Soon after that, I came with My disciples and moved into the same inn. A big room was immediately assigned to us, and the innkeeper himself, who also was more a Samaritan than a Jew, asked us at once what we wanted to eat and drink.

[20] And **I** said: “Just give what you have, and we will eat that.”

[21] Then the innkeeper ordered his servants immediately to bring bread and wine, and later a right number of fishes would be well prepared for us.

[22] As the innkeeper had ordered, so it was done.

[23] While we were heartily eating the bread and the wine for some time, the personnel were drawn by curiosity to us in order to see and to hear who we were and from where we came. But when they saw us, they realized that we certainly must be the same by whom the 10 lepers were cleansed, because these had given a precise description of us before, and so the servants recognized us very soon as the miraculous saviors.

[24] That was also immediately told to the innkeeper, and so he also paid immediately more attention to us and inquired about our situation and our work. He came to sit at our table, took also bread and wine and asked one of My disciples if we were perhaps the same men of whom there was One named Jesus who has completely cleansed the 10 lepers only with the power of His word.

[25] The disciple, whose name was **James the little**, said however: “There at the head of the table sits the Lord. Ask Him, then He will give you the right answer.”

[26] Then **the innkeeper** came immediately to Me and said: “Listen, Friend, are You that wonderful Savior, who outside of the market has cleansed those 10 from their malicious leper disease, only by the power and might of His word? Are You now the already widely known Jesus of Nazareth?”

[27] **I** said: “Bring them here who told you that. They will surely tell you again if I am the One.”

[28] Then the innkeeper went immediately away and brought some of those who were cleansed to us, and at once they said with one voice (**the healed ones**): “Yes, yes, that is the One who has shown to us, ungrateful ones, that great mercy.”

[29] And now also the 9, who did not turn around before, fell down before Me and gave Me the honor.

[30] But **I** said to them: “Since you were driven to Me by fear that you might be affected again by the leper disease, you have now also come to give God the honor. It will be forgiven to you this time and you will remain clean, but in the future My blessing will

not remain with those who after they have received mercy are too lazy to give honor to the One from whom they have received the mercy. Now stand up and go, and from now on do not sin anymore.”

[31] Then those who were cleansed stood up, gave once more thanks and went again to the room that was assigned to them.

[32] Now the innkeeper knew with whom he was dealing. He became at once full of respect for Me, left the room and went to the kitchen and ordered his female cooks that they had to prepare the very best fish, which also happened.

35. SOME PHARISEES AND SCRIBES TEMPT THE LORD



URING the evening all Pharisees, rabbi's and a scribe who held an office in this market place where also in this inn, and the innkeeper informed them about it, assuming to give Me a pleasant company with that, for I, who had cleansed before the 10 from their malicious leper disease in a miraculous way, was now also his guest and was with several companions in the large dining hall.

[2] When **the Pharisees, the scribe and the rabbi's** heard that from the innkeeper, they stood immediately up from their table and said among each other: “Good, we will test Him to see if it is really true what is known about Him from far and wide and even among the gentiles. They say that He is the promised Messiah of the Jews and who will establish the Kingdom of God on Earth. We will see how He will stand before us.”

[3] So with these intentions and escorted by the innkeeper they came to us in the big dining hall, ordered immediately a table to be set for them and let abundantly the best wine and bread and well-prepared fishes and still other food be put on it. When the table was richly provided, for the great gratification of their thick bellies, they went to sit down and showed by their words and gestures that they were in charge in this place.

[4] However we behaved very indifferent before them as if we

hardly noticed that they had installed themselves in our dining hall. We ate and drank and talked about very casual things. The fishes were now also put on our table and we began to eat them.

[5] **The Pharisees** noticed that we ate the most expensive noble fishes and that besides that we also drank the best wine. Then **one of the Pharisees** turned to the innkeeper and said: “Why did you not also have these kind of fishes be prepared for us? Are we perhaps less than these Galileans of whom we know several of them very well?”

[6] **The innkeeper** said: “Less or not less, that makes no difference to me. Whatever someone has ordered, he also receives. What you have ordered stands also on your table, but if you also want noble fishes then there is still time to let them be prepared for you, as much as you want.”

[7] **But the Pharisees** knew that these kinds of fishes were very expensive and that the innkeeper always let himself be paid very well for that, and therefore they did not order any noble fishes. But in order to explain away the stinginess of the Pharisees, **one of them** said: “If we cannot be first to have these kinds of fishes, then we also do not want to be second to have them.”

[8] **The innkeeper** said: “You can now say what you want, this does not confuse me in the least. Who can force me to give what I want to someone who only has desired something to eat without specifying out of what the food had to consist, and who can command me to set something else on the table than what he clearly desired? In short, with me counts the ancient principle: ‘everyone his own.’

[9] **The Pharisee** said: “You are right in this, and we have no objections, but it is strange of you, since you do not have exactly the reputation of being a generous man, that precisely towards these Galileans you are so well-disposed while all of them are not from far away, and there is also the question if they will be able to pay you for these expensive fishes.”

[10] **The innkeeper** said: “Also that is of no concern to you.

People like you are to me really nothing exceptional, but people like the Savior Jesus of Nazareth who you know, who by the truly miraculous power of His word and will can heal in one moment 10 men from the most malicious leper disease and make them completely healthy, and to whom you gave hardly 1 hour ago the written certificate, are surely extremely exceptional and have actually never existed until now. And therefore, everyone will surely well understand that out of free will, this consideration that they deserve should be given to them.”

[11] On this excellent counter remark the Pharisees did not know what to answer and they tried to save their face with good looks, although inwardly they were full of wickedness. They ate and drank now very considerably, and we did the same and did not care about what the displeased Pharisees were doing or about what kind of words they were speaking among each other.

[12] But when the wine had greatly heated up the Pharisees and were trying to start an argument with Me, **the scribe** stood up, came shamelessly standing before Me and said: “Master, do tell us out of which power You are doing Your apparent miracles?”

[13] I said: “This I surely want to tell you – but first you should answer My question. Tell Me: were the preaching and baptism of John ordained by God or were they purely a work of men?”

[14] Now the scribe did not know what to answer Me, for he thought: If I say: ‘they were ordained by God’, then He will tell me: ‘then why did you not believe him?’ and if I say: ‘they were purely the work of men’, then we soon will have the innkeeper and tomorrow the whole market place against us, because they all took John for a prophet who was awakened by God.

[15] Only after a while he (**the scribe**) said: “Master, this truly none of us know, and so I cannot answer You yes or no.”

[16] I said: “Then I also cannot tell you out of which power I am doing My miracles, and so we are just as far with one another as before.”

[17] Then there was also a **Pharisee** who came to Me and said: “Master, we have heard already many different things about You,

and among those, also that by You the Kingdom of God will be established. By Your deeds You are witnessing of Yourself that You are the One whom all the Jews are expecting, based on the ancient promise. Look, also we want to believe in You, but do tell us how and when the Kingdom of God will come among the people on this Earth.”

[18] **I** said: “Most certainly not in the way you imagine.”

[19] **Now the scribe** said: “But then how?”

[20] **I** said: “The Kingdom of God will come without any outer pomp and splendor, and it will not be said: ‘Look, here’, or ‘there it is’, because the Kingdom of God is not a material, but a spiritual Kingdom, because God is in Himself the eternal original and purest Spirit, and His Kingdom is therefore also not given for the body and established on this Earth, but for the soul and the spirit of the body. The soul and the spirit are however inside man and not outside of him, and so the Kingdom of God is only inside man, and when it will come to man, he will only feel it in himself and not outside of himself.”

[21] **On this My** answer the Pharisees did not know anymore what to reply to Me and they returned to their table.

[22] **The innkeeper** was secretly glad that I shut the mouth of the Pharisees, and he let new, first class wine to be set on our table and he said to Me: “Eat and drink as much as you want, for the bill is for me this time.”

[23] **And we ate and drank very cheerfully.**

[24] **When the Pharisees** saw that, they were even more offended and said aloud among themselves: “And this should be the Messiah sent by God in this world! What are He and His disciples gluttons and drunkards! And moreover we know that He associates with tax collectors, heathens and other sinners and eats His bread with unwashed hands, and no matter how much miracles He performs, a true scribe and Pharisee will not believe in Him!”

[25] **Then the innkeeper** said: “He certainly will care very little about that. If He is the Lord – and this I also do believe now – then He, who is in Himself the most perfect Spirit out of God, will not

need to conform Himself to our worldly institutions, but we should conform ourselves to the ones He will give us.”

[26] **The Pharisees said:** “What you say to us does not irritate us, because we know that you are more a Samaritan than a Jew. We are irritated about the fact that He, through His teaching and deeds, is seducing many Jews and claims to be something that He cannot be because in many respects He does not keep the law of Moses.”

[27] **Then I stood up with a serious face and said:** “With whom will I compare this kind of degenerated people? John ate and drank almost nothing else except grasshoppers and wild honey and led a strict life of penitence. Then they said: ‘What is this man a pretender and a hypocrite. But this they said because John showed them their complete godlessness and countless sins, and for this reason they planned to bring Herod to the point that he would throw him into prison and let him cut off his head.

[28] I eat and drink, do not behave as an extremist or a sulking person and meet everyone in a friendly way. I help everyone who comes to Me, believes in Me and asks Me for help, and then they say: ‘What is this Man a drunkard and a big eater and a friend of sinners, tax collectors and heathens, and He does not keep the rules of Moses.’

[29] **But what about when they teach:** ‘If you make an offering it will be more useful to you than if you yourself would honor your father and mother.’ Do they not abolish God’s commandments with that and torment the people with rules that they invented for the greatest benefit of their bellies? Therefore, later all the more damnation will come over them. They put unbearable loads upon the people, while they themselves do not touch them with the little finger. For the big offerings they promise to keep long prayers and let them be rattled off before the eyes of the deceived and blind people in a disgusting heartless and useless manner by their subordinate servants. Are they then not the same as men who are nursing mosquitoes and in return for that swallow up camels?

[30] Yes, yes, although they eat their bread with washed hands but their heart is full of filth and dirt. Therefore they also look like neat

and elegant whitewashed graves that are inside full of rotting and stench. To eat bread with unwashed hands does not defile man – and the least when there is no possibility to wash his hands before eating bread, which happens often – but lie, deceit, jealousy, stinginess, gluttony and revelry, pride, hatred, anger, fornication, harlotry, adultery and the denial of God in man are defiling the whole man and make him a child of Hell.”

[31] When the Pharisees heard that from Me they became very angry, stood up from their table and left the hall, which was very pleasant to us all.

[32] The innkeeper came to Me and could not thank Me enough that I had thrown the truth straight into the face of the Pharisees, and also all My disciples praised Me.

[33] Finally **the innkeeper** said: “O Lord and Master, I suppose that these words of Yours will bring one or the other of these Pharisees to a better opinion about You?”

[34] **I** said: “You will more easily whitewash 10 Mores than that 1 of these hypocrites would repent and do penance. When stinginess, jealousy and lust for power are too deeply rooted in man, then they hardly can become truly better. But we will just let them breed among each other, tomorrow is another day on which there will be something to do.”

36. THE LORD HEALS THE SICK HELPER OF THE INNKEEPER



BUT you have a sick helper who is your favorite, because he always has served you in the most loyal and zealous way and who cannot stand up from his sickbed since already 1 full year because he is afflicted by gout. If you want and believe, I can help him.”

[2] **The innkeeper** said: “O Lord and Master, if You would like to show me this mercy, I want to do everything that You want me to do for You.”

[3] **I** said: “Then it will happen according to your faith. Go and see

if your helper is still in pain.”

[4] Then the innkeeper went immediately to the room where the sick helper was, and see, the helper was healthy, and he told the innkeeper that he had clearly the impression that there had been lightning around him, and after that in one moment all pain and weakness had left him, so much so that he now immediately wanted to stand up from his sickbed. God must have done a miracle to him.

[5] **The innkeeper** said: “You surely can stand up now and come then into the big hall. There you will see the One who made you miraculously healthy.”

[6] The helper did quickly what the innkeeper told him to do, and the latter came with a very thankful heart immediately back to us.

[7] When the innkeeper came to us again and had expressed his thanks to Me, the healed helper came also soon after him, and together with him came also the other personnel of the house and servants and maidservants, and they asked who of us was the One who had healed the chief helper miraculously of his gout.

[8] **The innkeeper** pointed with his hand to Me and said: “This God-Man here, of whom I must say that no one of us is in the least worthy that He came to us and walked through the doorstep of my house. Thank Him, all of you for all the mercy that He has given us, and give Him always the honor before all men.”

[9] After these words, the innkeeper kneeled down immediately at My feet, thanked Me and praised Me loudly. Then also the others of the personnel did the same, the servants and maidservants, which caused a great noise in the house that could also be heard by the Pharisees, although their room was far away from our hall. And one of them came to see what was happening.

[10] When he heard that I had completely healed the helper from his gout, and in which manner, he was irritated and said to the innkeeper whom he called (**the Pharisee**): “Watch out for this agitator of the people, for if He does those miracles with the help of the chief of devils or by another kind of sorcery, which He has

perhaps learned from the Essenes, then the Romans will soon come to know that the whole people runs after Him, who will finally make Him king over all the Jews, and then they will come down to us and will really beat us up.”

[11] **The innkeeper said:** “Thanks to this Man of wonders, whom the Romans know certainly already for a longer time than we, I have nothing to fear from them, but from you I could fear everything if I were not a Roman citizen. But you should fear this Man who must be filled with the Spirit of God, for otherwise He impossibly could do such signs and perform such deeds that are only possible to God, and the one who is filled with God’s Spirit is also a true Lord over everything in Heaven and on the Earth, and those who are His enemies should only fear Him, but He not them. So the warning that you gave me will never take root in my mind.”

[12] **When the rabbi – who was actually a lower Pharisee – heard this from the innkeeper, he became still more irritated than before. He did not say anything anymore and went back to his companions.**

[13] **When he came to them, they immediately asked him what happened.**

[14] **However, the rabbi was thinking about the words of the innkeeper, and therefore he indifferently reported what happened and said that mostly the personnel burst out in insignificant jubilation.**

[15] **The other Pharisees were satisfied with that and did not ask any further and continued to revel and said:** “Just let us grant the amazed innkeeper his pleasure to praise his Savior and Messiah as a wonder doctor who is traveling around and who unmistakably comes from the school of the Essenes, and whom also the Romans are holding in great esteem. In a few weeks time everything will again be gone and forgotten with him.”

[16] **This mood of the already really drunk Pharisees was good for us, because by that they left us in peace and we were able to discuss important things with one another.**

[17] **Also the personnel, the servants and maidservants who came**

into our hall went on command of the innkeeper to work again, for they still had a lot of things to do because a few strangers who – mostly for business reasons – came from Capernaum to this market. Only the healed helper stayed with us, and he ate and drank with us and strengthened himself.

37. THE VALUE OF THE TEMPLE RULES



HE innkeeper said to Me: “O Lord and Master, as we are sitting here quietly together and do not have to be afraid of being disturbed by anyone, and since it is also not so late in the evening, I ask You to name me a few things which are necessary to attain the true salvation of the soul.”

[2] **I said:** “Believe in God without doubting, keep His commandments, love Him above all as much as you can, and your fellowmen as yourself, and believe that I am the promised Messiah who have come now Myself in a body to this world as the eternal Truth, the Light and the Life, so that all who believe in Him and live according to My teaching, will have the eternal life. If you believe all that and act accordingly, you will obtain and keep for eternity the true, living salvation for your soul.

[3] **Look,** only this is completely sufficient to attain to the Kingdom of God in yourself. All the rest is useless and has with regard to the benefit of the soul no value before God. If I as the Lord of all life am saying this to you, you also can believe it is so and not otherwise.”

[4] **The innkeeper said:** “O Lord and Master, I believe this now firmly and without any doubt. However, Moses gave still a lot more rules and precepts. For instance that a Jew may eat only certain foods, must wash his body frequently, must fast, must do penance in sack and ashes, must carry a cloak made of hairs, and still a lot of other things which are difficult to remember and therefore still more difficult to keep, by which you then also live constantly in fear of being full of sins which you unknowingly might have committed. How should we actually behave concerning

these things? Is the strict observance of all precepts, which Moses and also the other prophets have given, an absolute condition to attain to the satisfaction of God?"

[5] **I said:** "If you keep what I have told you just now, you have by that fulfilled everything that is written in Moses and all the prophets where it says what you have to do. Man must eat and drink to keep him physically alive, and the foods and drinks should be clean and fresh. Likewise it is also good and healthy for the body to keep it clean as much as possible, and so also to be pure, moderate and sober in all things. Thus, these kinds of precepts are not only good and beneficial for the Jews, but for all men, because also the soul cannot raise himself so easily in a sick body unto that which can benefit his salvation and strengthen him for eternal life.

[6] Look, for this reason God prescribed through Moses and also through the other prophets that which is good for the body during the time of the earthly life, and it is to the benefit of man to keep these rules.

[7] However, the one who does what I have just told you, will be guided by the spirit of the Kingdom of God in his own heart, and this will show him also the rules for the benefit of his body. And so already everything is contained in what I have told you. Have you understood all this now?"

[8] While the healed helper agreed on that very thankfully, **the innkeeper said:** "O Lord and Master, we thank You from the deepest of our soul, with all our heart and with all the strength of our life for Your very wise and truthful lesson which has kindled a total different light in us compared to the long preachings of the Pharisees who say that the whole salvation of men depends only on the fact of keeping strictly those many outer things and rules, but keeping God's commandments by which the soul is purified and made stronger for the eternal life they attach almost no importance and say that man must make offerings instead, which are more useful for him than when he rigidly and troublesomely would keep the commandments.

[9] And so you can see the people who often lay down big

offerings before the doors of the Pharisees, but now you hardly can find anyone who strictly observes the commandments of Moses, because the people say: ‘if offerings are the same for God, and we can still be more purified of our sins than when we troublesomely observe the commandments, then offerings are much easier, and our conscious is lighter, because according to the words of the Pharisees the offerings will atone everything before God, but the keeping of the commandments only insofar as someone was capable to observe strictly and conscientiously one or the other commandment.’

[10] Well now, if we compare that teaching with what You, o Lord and Master, have advised and very clearly explained to me, then there is an infinite great difference. With You everything is the fullest and living truth, and with the Pharisees it is a dirty, dead lie by which truly not one soul can attain to eternal life. Lord, what should we do now regarding the Pharisees?”

[11] **I said:** “Listen to what they announce as the pure word from Moses and the prophets, and act according to that pure word, but do not keep their own rules, for in God’s eyes they are an abomination.

[12] For it is also written: ‘See, this people honors Me with the lips, but their heart is far away from Me.’ However, I say to you all: the end of those who preach a human teaching has come near. That is why I, who am the Truth, the Way and the Life, have come to you, and I will wipe away the lie and its evil works. Although I will soon leave this world, and during the time that I will be absent visibly, the lie and its false and evil things will still be rampant for some time among the people on Earth, but then at the right time I will come back to you people with all might and power and will make an end to the dominion of the lie and deceit.

[13] Already now I prepare in the hearts of men the ground for it, and I am building a new temple and a new city of God. Let us finish its construction as soon as possible, so that the old temple and the city of lie, deceit and all evil will be destroyed forever.

[14] This you surely cannot understand now in all its purity, but

when you will be permeated with My Spirit, then also that will be very clear, and then you will remember what I have told you beforehand.”

[15] These words of Mine were also for de disciples not completely clear, and therefore they said among each other (**the disciples**): “He already spoke a few times about a 2nd coming on this Earth, but always in a rather vague manner, like the prophets do. Just let us ask Him now straightly, maybe this time He will tell us more, and more specific.”

38. THE 2ND COMING OF THE LORD



AFTER this conversation among themselves **the disciples** turned to Me and said: “Lord and Master, You have said already several times that it will be given to us to well understand the secrets of the Kingdom of God, and You also have very clearly revealed to us already so many things, so that in the spirit we can well understand Your infinite creation and still 1,000 other things which no worldly wise person could ever imagine and which, even through personal investigation and seeking he will never be able to clearly imagine, for which reason all human knowledge was until now only piece-work. Please tell us now also something more specific about Your 2nd coming. In which time will You return, and where and how? Because we are of the opinion that also this is part of understanding the secrets of God’s Kingdom.”

[2] **I** said: “Also this I have told you already several times very extensively. But because you also are not completely permeated with My Spirit you still do not understand it fully. The year, the day and the hour I cannot tell you with certainty because everything on this Earth depends on the complete free will of men. Therefore, not even an angel in Heaven knows it, but only the Father and also the one to whom He wants to reveal it. Besides, it is for the salvation of the soul not absolutely necessary to know it very precisely beforehand.

[3] Would it be good for someone to know very precisely beforehand the day and the hour of his death? For very few who are reborn in the spirit, yes, but for numberless people it would be very bad, because the approaching hour of their death would fill them so much with fear, anguish and despair and become great enemies of life, in such a way that they would prematurely take away their life in order to escape the anguish of death, or they would come into such great laziness of life that little salvation could be expected for the soul. So it is better for man not to know all things for sure beforehand, namely as to what, how and when this and that can and also must come over him in this world.

[4] I say to you: the time will come that your spiritual descendants will ask, just like now here, when the day of the Son of Man will come, and will desire to see the day, and they will still not see it as you desire. In that time many will rise and come forward, and with a wise face they will say: 'Look here', 'Look there' and 'That is the day'. But then do not go there to follow such prophets.

[5] The day of My 2nd coming will be as a lightning that goes from the east to the west, high in the clouded sky, and will illuminate everything that is under the sky. Before that will happen – as I have told you already several times – the Son of Man must still suffer many things and be rejected entirely by this generation, namely by the Jews and the Pharisees, and in later times by those who will be called the new Jews and Pharisees.

[6] As it happened during the time of Noah so it will happen in the time of the 2nd coming of the Son of Man. They ate and drank very cheerfully, they married and let themselves be given to marriage until the day that Noah climbed into the ark and the flood came and they all drowned. And it will happen in the same manner as during the time of Lot: they ate and drank, they bought and sold, and they planted and constructed. But on the day – as I have explained to you more in detail on the Mount of Olives – that Lot went out of Sodom it was already raining fire and sulfur from the sky, and they all perished by it.

[7] Now look, this is how it also will be and happen during the

time when the Son of Man will be revealed again. Whoever will be on that day on the roof and knows that his household goods are in the house, let him not come down from the roof to get his household goods – which has to be understood as follows: he who really understands those things should stay with that understanding and not leave that level out of fear that by that he might lose worldly advantages, because those things will be destroyed.

[8] So also still another image: whoever is in the field (the freedom of understanding) should not turn around to what is behind him (old deceiving teachings and their rules), but should remember the wife of Lot, and should continue to strive forwards in the truth.

[9] I will still tell you more: during that same time there will be 2 in a mill and do the same work. The one will be accepted and the other left behind, which means: the honest worker will be accepted and the dishonest and selfish one will be left behind, because he who will try to keep his soul¹ because of the world, will lose it, but he who will lose it for the sake of the world will keep his life and will help him towards true eternal life.

[10] And still further, I say to you: in one and the same night of the soul, 2 people will lie in one and the same bed. Also then, the one will be accepted and the other left behind, which means: 2 people will outwardly be in the sphere of one and the same confession of faith, but the one will be in the active living faith and will therefore be accepted in the living and lightful Kingdom of God, but the other will only adhere to the outer cult, which has no inner value for the life of the soul and the spirit, and will not be accepted in the living and lightful Kingdom of God, because his faith without the works of neighborly love is as it were dead.

[11] And further: there will be 2 people in the field of work. The one who will work without self-interest in the living faith out of love for God and out of love for his fellowman, will also be accepted in the true Kingdom of God. But the one who will work in the same field as the Pharisees without inner living faith out of

¹ his life.

pure self-interest, will obviously be left behind and will not be accepted in the living and lightful Kingdom of God.

[12] See, that is how it will be and happen during the 2nd coming the Son of Man, and this is how it will manifest itself. When in the future you will be permeated deeper with My Spirit, you will also clearly understand all that I have said now. At this moment however, I cannot explain it to you more clearly and more understandably.”

[13] **The disciples** said: “Lord and Master, that is all right and we believe Your words, but where and when will it happen, counted according to earthly time? Surely, this You also can tell us.”

39. THE END TIME BEFORE THE 2ND COMING OF THE LORD



SAID: “It is really remarkable how little you still understand things. I have already so often explained to you why the earthly time cannot be calculated precisely and with certainty as you think, like I could tell you very exactly in advance and up to a moment when this or that mountain and its rocky tops will be destroyed by a lightning. Because in that case we are dealing with judged matter, which is in everything completely dependent on the power of My will, but with men who have a free, self-deciding will, it does not happen in the same way. The reason of it I have already often shown to you and you finally will understand it once, and therefore you should not come to Me with the same questions each time.

[2] But if you absolutely want to have determined the ‘where’ and ‘when’ more precisely, then remember what I will tell you now: where there is a corpse, there soon the free eagles will gather.”

[3] **The disciples** said: “O Lord and Master, now You have again said something which we cannot understand. What is the corpse and what are the eagles, and when will the corpse be, and where will the free eagles come from?”

[4] **I** said: “Just look at the rotten and unbelieving institution of

Pharisees, then you will see the corpse. I and all who believe in Me, Jews and gentiles, are the eagles who soon will eat up the corpse completely. So also, the night of the sins of the soul are a corpse around which the light of life is spreading itself and destroys the corpse with all its hazes and illusions, just like the morning does with the night.

[5] As this is now happening before our eyes with the Jewry that is now without truth or faith, by which it has become a very big corpse that will be finished in about 50 earthly years, so it will also happen in later times with the teaching and the church that I am establishing now. It will become an even more terrible corpse than the Jewry now, and then also the free eagles of light and life will come over it from all directions, and with the fire of the true love and with the power of the light of truth they will consume it as a corpse that wants to spoil everything. And that can still happen before 2 full 1,000 earthly years after My life as I am now bodily present here amongst you, will have passed by – which I also have already explained to you at other occasions.

[6] Then you were wondering, just like now, why this will actually be permitted by God. However, I also have already often, like also this time, shown you that I cannot and may not guide men with My almighty will to whom I have given a completely free will, a free self-determination as well as all the other created beings, small and big in the whole of infinity, because if I would do that, then man would not be a human being but would be just like an animal or plant or stone that is judged by My almightiness. Hopefully you will realize and understand this now and will not ask Me so easily about things which are obvious for all those who think somehow clearly.

[7] If already now in this time, while I am still walking around in a body on this Earth amongst you, and am teaching, there are already a number of people who travel around in My name and who also spread My teaching for their material benefit but who are also mixing it with their own impure seed from which soon between the meager wheat in the field of life and its truth much

bad weed will grow up, will it then be surprising when in later times in My name still more false teachers and prophets will rise up who are not called, and who, with the sword in the hand, will shout with mighty words to the people: 'Look, here is Christ!', or 'There He is!'

[8] When you, and later your true, pure successors will hear and see that, then do not believe such shouters. Because at their works they can be quite as easily be recognized as the trees from their fruits, because a good tree brings forth good fruits. At thornbushes will not grow any grapes and at thistles no figs.

[9] Of what the Kingdom of God consists, and the only way on which it can manifest itself in man himself, and where it happens, I have just told the Pharisees in your presence. So you surely will realize and understand that you should not believe those who shout: 'Look here!', 'Look there!' For as the spirit is inside man, and all the life, thinking, feeling, knowing and wanting originally comes from it and penetrates all fibers, in the same way is also the Kingdom of God, which is the true kingdom of life of the spirit, only inside man and not in one or the other manner outwardly or outside of man.

[10] Whoever will accept it in him in this manner and will understand it according to the full, living truth, can never in eternity be misled by a false prophet. But whoever in his mind looks like a weathercock or a reed in the water, will of course with much difficulty find the harbor of life that is filled with peace and that is illuminated by the truth. Therefore, be no weathercock or reed, but true rocks of life over which the storms and the waves of water have no hold. Did you well understand this now?"

[11] **The disciples** said: "Yes, Lord and Master, now we have again well understood You, because You have very clearly and with understandable words explained this matter to us. But when You often speak to us in very concealed images, we can do nothing else except saying: 'Lord, where?' and 'how?' But we also thank You now, as always, for this mercy that You have given us, and we ask You to have always that much patience with us."

[12] **I** said: “If I would be like men, My patience with you would surely have been many times too little, but because I am as you know Me, full of the greatest patience, tolerance, love and meekness, you will never have to complain about My patience. However, be also that patient, meek and humble as I am with all My heart, and love one another as brothers among each other, just as I also love you and as I always have loved you, then you will by that show to everyone that you truly are My disciples. Let no one of you think that he is more than his fellow disciple, for you are all equal brothers. Only I am your Lord and Master and will also be and remain like that in all eternity and also during all the times of this world. For if the Father would have no patience with His children, then who else would there be to have patience with them?”

[13] Now we have worked with each other already a long time for God’s Kingdom, and during that time you also have made so many mistakes, and still not one of you has been rejected by Me, not even the one whom I have already pointed out to you many times and who up to this moment is still a devil who has still not improved his life. But My love and patience have still not judged him. How much less will it judge those who cling to Me with all love and full faith. Therefore, you can all be sure about My highest love and patience, for if someone stays in Me, I will also stay in him.”

40. THE KINGDOM OF GOD



Now **the innkeeper** said with deep awe and respect: “O Lord and Master, Your deeds are very wonderful, but Your words are truly pure truth and life, because when You act, then also a blind person can notice that in Your will there is more than human force and might, but when You speak, then one can really recognize completely that You are the Lord Himself, because the wisdom of Your words is greater than the most bright light of the sun at noontime.

[2] But now also I should take the freedom to ask You, o Lord and Master, a question for the sake of the Kingdom of God. If You mercifully would allow this to me, I will speak.”

[3] **I said: “Just say what you want, and I will answer you.”**

[4] **Now the innkeeper said:** “Lord and Master, to Your dear disciples and besides that, also to me and my chief helper who was healed by You, You have spoken many very wise things about Your 2nd coming and thus also about the coming of the Kingdom of God on this Earth. But one thing caught my attention, and that is concerning the Kingdom of God on Earth that will exist somewhere in the faraway future, and that it will thus also really come on the Earth.

[5] So You also said that the Kingdom of God will in no way come among the people with outer splendor, but that it is already deep inside man, and that he only has to search it, find it and develop it in himself.

[6] But I am of the opinion that for us all who are here in Your presence, it is clearly not in us, but still very far outside of us, and that we can say with the greatest confidence: Look, here is Christ, who is since eternity the anointed Lord of all glory, and He Himself is everything in all, and thus also the eternal Kingdom of God and the Life and the Truth. Since You are now with us, Your Kingdom is not in us but with us, amongst us.

[7] Will this very holy occurrence also be the same during the time that You mentioned or will Your 2nd coming still be very different from Your present coming?”

[8] **I said: “O My dear friend, you have spoken now very well, and I can say that it was not your flesh and blood that inspired you in this, but only your spirit. But still, during the future return of the Son of Man it will be as I have clearly said to you all.**

[9] **You are completely right when you say that the Kingdom of God has come to you in Me and is now with and among you, but this is still not sufficient to attain to the eternal life of the soul and keep it completely, for although the Kingdom of God has come to you in Me, it has by that not yet penetrated in your inner self,**

which only can and will happen when you will have completely accepted My teaching in your will and thus also in everything that you do, without considering the world. Once this will be the case, you will say no more: 'Christ, and with Him the Kingdom of God has come to us and He lives with us and is among us', but you will say: 'Now it is not I who lives, but Christ lives in me'. When this will be the case with you, then you will also completely understand that the Kingdom of God does not come with outer pomp and splendor to and in men, but that it develops only inside of man and draws the soul into the eternal life of that Kingdom of God and will keep him permanently in it.

[10] It is true that the way has to be shown to man first from the outside by God's word, which comes to man from the Heavens and by which man can say: 'Peace be with you, for the Kingdom of God has come near', but therefore man is still not yet in the Kingdom of God, and the Kingdom of God not in him.

[11] Only when man begins to believe without doubting, and makes his faith alive by acting according to the teaching, the Kingdom of God develops itself in man, as the life in a plant develops itself unmistakably in spring from the inside when the plant is shone by the light of the sun, warms up and is by that urged to inner activity.

[12] Although all the life is stimulated and awakened from the outside, the originating, the development, the unfolding, forming and strengthening comes always from the inside.

[13] So also, animals and men must first absorb their food in them from the outside, but this absorbing of food and drink is still by far not the real feeding of the body, but this happens only after, from the stomach to all the parts of the body. As the stomach is in a way the life-feeding heart of the body, so is also the heart of man the feeding stomach of the soul for the awakening of the Spirit from God in himself, and My teaching is the true food of life and the true drink of life for the stomach of the soul.

[14] So in what I am teaching men I am a true nourishing bread from the Heavens, and acting according to that teaching is a true

drink of life, a very good and strong wine that by its spirit awakens the whole man to life and enlightens him throughout by the illuminating blazing flame of the fire of life. Whoever will eat that bread and will drink that wine, will no more see, feel or taste death in eternity.

[15] If you have understood this now, then act also accordingly, then My words will become full, living truth in you.”

41. EXPLANATION OF THE LORD ABOUT ‘EATING HIS FLESH AND DRINKING HIS BLOOD’



Now the disciples said: “Lord and Master, this lesson that You gave us can be well understood, but once in Capernaum where so many people from all regions around Jerusalem followed You and when You gave a similar instruction about eating Your flesh and drinking Your blood, it was clearly a hard teaching, namely for those people who did not understand Your simple, clear word as it should be understood according to its true meaning, and that is why many disciples of that time left You. We ourselves did not understand it at first, but the innkeeper, who has never been a disciple of You, gave us its interpretation. And if we now compare that teaching with this one, it means the same as what You have now very understandably and very clearly explained to us. Are we right or not?”

[2] **I said:** “Indeed, because bread and flesh are one and the same, as well as wine and blood, and whoever will in My word eat the bread of the Heavens and will drink the wine of life by acting according to that word, thus by doing the works of the true, most unselfish love for God and his fellowman, will also eat My flesh and drink My blood, for as the physical bread that is eaten by men is changed in man into flesh and the wine that is drunk changed into blood, so will also in the soul of man the bread of My word be changed into flesh and the wine of the active love be changed into blood.

[3] But when I say: ‘Whoever will eat My flesh’, then by that is

also indicated that he has not only taken My word into his memory and into his brains, but at the same time also into his heart, which is – as I already said – the stomach of the soul, and he also did the same with the wine of the active love, which is by that no more wine but already the blood of life, because the memory and the reason of man are in relation to the heart, just like the mouth is in relation to the physical stomach. As long as the physical bread is still between the teeth in the mouth it is still no flesh but bread, but when it is chewed and comes into the stomach and is there mixed with the stomach juices, then it is, what concerns its fine feeding particles, already flesh, because it corresponds to the flesh. So also with the wine or with water, which certainly contains also wine substances, because without water, which is carried by the Earth to feed all plants and animals, the grapevine would die. As long as the wine is kept into the mouth it will not change into blood. However, in the stomach it very soon will be changed into it.

[4] So whoever hears My word and keeps it into his memory, keeps the bread in the mouth of the soul. When he seriously begins to think about it with his reason, he chews the bread with the teeth of the soul, because the reason is for the soul what the teeth in the mouth are for the physical man.

[5] When My bread, thus My teaching, is chewed by the reason, or has been understood and accepted as the full truth, it also has to be accepted in the heart by the love for the truth, and by the firm will it has to be changed into deeds. When this happens, then the word is changed into flesh and by the serious decisive will into blood of the soul, which is My Spirit in him, without which the soul would be as dead as a body without blood.

[6] The serious decisive will corresponds to a good digestive capability of the physical stomach by which the whole body is kept healthy and strong. When the digestive power of the stomach is weak, then the whole body is already sick and weak and will even become sick from the best and purest food.

[7] It is the same for the soul in whose heart the will to transform the teaching into deeds has become weakened. He does not

achieve the full, healthy, spiritual power, is divided, falls easily into all kinds of doubts and objections, and tastes one time this and then again another kind of food to see if perhaps that one may have a better and more strengthening effect. But with that the soul, who once has become somewhat sick, is still not completely helped. ‘Yes’, you ask yourselves, ‘can a sick soul then not be helped at all?’ O yes, I say. But how?”

42. THE MEANING OF ACTING ACCORDING TO GOD’S WORD



LISTEN, when someone has a weak stomach, he once takes a drink of herbs that is well known to you, by which the badly digested foods are moved away from the stomach and the intestines along the well-known natural way. Those badly digested foods can be compared with the objections that are absorbed in the soul, namely if he should believe this or that completely and should act accordingly.

[2] Once the physical weak stomach is cleansed, then what has to be done to make it strong again and that it should remain strong? Such a person should become really active, and at the same time take good exercise in the fresh, pure air. By that, the stomach will in the first place regain its full and healthy strength. Look, this is what the soul should do also. He must cleanse his heart of all false doctrines, wrong notions and ideas. Then he should absorb the truth as I am teaching you, with love, willfully and in full faith, and should be busy and active with it, then by that he will soon become much stronger and also become fully and permanently healthy.

[3] Therefore, none of you should only be listeners, but should also seriously and zealously act according to My word. Then in a very short time all objections and doubts will have disappeared from his soul.

[4] The physical stomach of the body, being in a healthy, strong condition, can take up all kinds of clean and if necessary also

unclean food into itself without suffering damage, because through its activity it removes all that is unclean from itself or transforms it into something clean. And this is also what the strong and completely healthy stomach of the soul does. And thus for the pure everything is pure. And even the most impure spiritual stench of pestilence of Hell cannot cause any damage to him.

[5] When you will completely possess My Kingdom in yourselves, you will be able to walk over snakes and scorpions and drink poison from Hell without causing you the least of damage.

[6] If you all have well understood this now and have grasped it, you will now also perceive according to the full living truth what I wanted you to understand in Capernaum with ‘eating My flesh’ and ‘drinking My blood’, and from now on you surely will not call it a hard teaching anymore.

[7] Already in the visible natural world the deeper causes of things and of many phenomena are so difficult to explain for the pure human reason in such a way that it can remain free from all possible errors that feeds the bad superstition, and that it can in this way walk the way of the truth. How much more difficult will the pure reason of the brains understand the heavenly spiritual things, powers, actions and phenomena which are invisible for the physical eye of man and to make it perceptible for the soul.

[8] Therefore I always say to you: you will only be initiated in all wisdom related to the spiritual, heavenly life’s conditions and its power and might when you will be completely newly born in My Spirit in the manner that I have extensively and clearly shown to you. And ask yourself now if you also have completely understood the correct, full truth of all that.”

[9] **The disciples said:** “Yes, Lord and Master, if You reveal to us the secrets of the Kingdom of God in this manner, they are also for us easy to understand, but when You speak in parables, then the meaning of Your words is for us always difficult and sometimes not at all to understand. But when after that, You explain the parables to us, we realize that only the godly all-wisdom can give such images and parables. O Lord, we thank You from the deepest

of our heart for You more than great patience and Your love for us. If we as men would ever become weak and tired on the way to the true new birth – the rebirth of Your Spirit in us – then do not leave us, Lord, but strengthen us and let us never become weak. And when our mind becomes fearful and sad when in the future You will no more visibly walk among us, then come with Your mercy and compassion, and comfort us, and revive our love, our faith, our hope and our expectation.”

[10] **The innkeeper and his healed chief helper said:** “O Lord and Master, we also ask You for what the disciples have asked You.”

[11] **I said:** “Truly, truly, I say to you: that which you will ask the Father in My name, will also be given to you. Where can you find a father among men, who are mostly bad, who would give to a child a stone when he asked him for a piece of bread, or who would give to a daughter a snake when she asked him for a fish?

[12] **When men who are – as already said – only bad, can give their children all good gifts, how much more will the Father in Heaven, who is the only One who is more than good, do good things for those who lovingly and believingly ask Him.**

[13] **Therefore you always can have a cheerful heart and be in a happy mood, because the holy and more than good Father always watches over you and takes care of your well-being and salvation of your soul.**

[14] **And the Father is in Me, as I am always and eternally in Him, and I give you the full assurance that I will never leave you behind as orphans, until the end of times of this Earth.**

[15] **Truly I say to you: who truly loves Me and keeps My commandments I will come to him and reveal Myself to him, and then everyone will be able to convince himself that he is not like an orphan in this world. The one to whom I will reveal Myself to him in this manner should however not keep it to himself, but should also tell this comfort to his brothers, so that also they may be comforted and strengthened by that.**

[16] **Who gladly will strengthen the weak, comfort the sorrowful and gladly will help those who are suffering, can in all these things**

expect tenfold the reward of life from Me. You always can be completely sure about that.”

[17] These words of Mine made everyone happy and cheerful, and the innkeeper let our cups again be filled with his best wine, and we drank and talked then also for about 1 hour with each other.

43. THE NIGHTLY STORM



HOWEVER, after 1 hour, the rest was disturbed on the street because a hard wind came up and was violently roaring through the doors and the windows of the house. The Pharisees were thereby greatly troubled, so much that 2 of them came to us, and they fearfully asked the innkeeper what would come of it.

[2] But **the innkeeper** who became afraid himself because of the storm that came up so suddenly, said: “How can you, servants of God, ask this to me? At other times you know everything, and say that without you, who are His only representatives and His servants and helpers, God can do nothing in this world. Then you surely will know best why God let this terrible storm come up so suddenly and what will come of it. What can I know, who am still considered by you as a half Samaritan, when you yourselves, who are so close to God, are full of fear and fright and ask me questions?”

[3] **One of the Pharisees** said: “Come now, do not boast so much because you are a citizen of Rome. Maybe that miraculous Nazarene, who is certainly well initiated in all the secrets of nature, can tell us something, because this has never happened before. A storm – as it is now roaring more and more violently – always begins with a rather mild wind that continues to blow harder until it develops into a hurricane. But not even the smallest of breeze preceded this storm, but it came completely suddenly, as a mighty flood, and it continues to roar and rage now with an ever-increasing fierceness. In that case, one may surely ask what will come of it?”

[4] While the Pharisee still wanted to continue his speech, a mighty lightning was discharging outside, after which immediately a terrible cracking thunder followed. Then the 2 Pharisees ran from fear and fright towards us to find protection and comfort with us. But it did not take long before a 2nd lightning discharged itself with an even more terrible fierceness, which also brought the rest of the Pharisees and the scribe to us. Everyone in the whole house was filled with fear and great fright and penetrated our hall, and the Pharisees crawled under the table at which they had eaten before.

[5] Then **the innkeeper** asked Me: “Lord and Master, it is difficult to determine the time at night when you can see no stars, but according to my feeling it could well be almost midnight. Most people, being tired of their daily work, must certainly have gone to sleep already 2 hours ago, and should rest during the night, but this storm will certainly give no rest to anyone since its raging is so fierce that even a half dead person has to wake up and has to be filled with fright and fear. Why did this storm had to come up so suddenly? Look, I am someone who does not easily become fainthearted, but I honestly confess that now, despite Your almighty presence, I become greatly worried by the raging and roaring of this storm that does not want to lie down at all. Can You, or do You not want to command this storm to lie down? Because the night is surely a time of rest for the whole nature and not a time of terribly disturbance. Why actually must certainly many thousands of people and animals feel the greatest fright and fear for such nightly storm?”

[6] **I** said: “Can you see at Me also fear and fright? Just let the outer storm roar and rage, for not one hair of a just person will be touched by that.

[7] Much worse is the inner storm of a big sinner when his end is near and he sees the eternal death before him and God’s wrath over his head. Can he still hope to receive mercy and compassion with God while he never has shown a poor person the least of charity, but rather driven a lot of people into the greatest misery and the hardest need? Look, friend, such storm of the soul is unspeakably

more terrible than such a natural storm by which the soil receives a great benefit, and besides that, only very little damage is caused. That is why we will let this natural storm continue to roar and rage for some time while we can be full of confidence and good courage.”

[8] When I had comforted and reassured the innkeeper with that, again several terrible flashes of lightning discharged themselves, after which such mighty cracking thunder followed, that the strong house of the innkeeper trembled completely.

[9] When **the Pharisees**, who were crouching down together under the table, felt that the whole house was trembling, they began with a shaking voice to shout loudly: ‘Jehovah, God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, take care of us and let us not perish because of these criminal insolent Essenes who do magic, who call themselves Jews but who deal with Samaritans, gentiles, tax collectors and other sinners, and exalt themselves above us, Your real servants, and make us everywhere suspicious with the people, who take Your name in vain and, as we know, are repeatedly violating the Sabbath.’”

[10] **The Pharisees** had hardly said that when again several even more fierce flashes of lightning discharged themselves with a loud cracking, and one lightning struck even into the synagogue that was located in front of the house of the innkeeper, and set fire to the woodwork, the roof and the benches, tables and closets.

[11] **The innkeeper** saw it immediately through the window of the hall and said to the Pharisees: “Stand up and go out to extinguish, because the last lightning has hit into your synagogue and set fire to the woodwork. In short, the synagogue is on flames. So go there and try to save your treasures and sacred things.”

[12] When the Pharisees heard that, they jumped up immediately, made a big spectacle in the house and wanted to force Me and My disciples to extinguish the fire.

[13] **But I** seriously said: “What have I to do with your fire and your synagogue. But did you not call upon your God? Why does He not hear your prayer? Truly, if I, of whom you blind Pharisees

think that I am an Essene, would ask the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob to command the storm to cease, the storm would also cease immediately. But I will not do that now, because you think that I am a heretic and sinner against your God, in whom you have never believed in your heart. So turn to your God, and see if He will hear and help you.”

[14] Then the Pharisees insisted even more and begged us to help them, if ever help was still possible with the fire that was already really spreading.

[15] Also **the innkeeper** beseeched Me and said: “O Lord and Master, if You do not want to listen to these blind Pharisees, then please listen to me, because see, my house is only 70 paces away from the burning synagogue. If the heavy wind would turn, then also my house would be in danger to catch fire, and this can happen very easily because there is no rain with the storm.”

[16] **I** said: “I already gave you once the assurance that no hair of the just will be touched, and even if the wind would turn 10 times, then still no disaster will come over you or your house. But such winds do not turn so easily, which I know very well. Therefore, you have nothing to fear.

[17] However, in the synagogue are a lot of piled up treasures that are unjustly acquired, for which poor widows and orphans are wailing and lamenting in foreign places while these blind Pharisees who let themselves be honored by the people as servants of God, fatten themselves undisturbed without being concerned for the true salvation of the people. That is why it is not a pity because of these treasures in which God can never take pleasure. But these here, who are now justly suffering damage, will in the future still have the same good life, just like they had until now.”

44. THE YOUNGEST PHARISEE RECOGNIZES THE LORD



WHEN the Pharisees heard Me saying that, **one of them, who was the best among them, said to the scribe:** “Listen, that Galilean is actually not wrong. It is true that His words are stinging like sharp arrows, but He speaks the truth. Why actually did the lightning hit exactly our synagogue? The Galilean knows what we are doing and can certainly not praise it, and therefore He knows very well that God will leave our prayer unanswered. We should approach Him more kindly now, then He still may save us in a miraculous way. Who of us can now assert with certainty that He is not the One who was promised to us?”

[2] **The scribe said:** “Will you also start to witness against us? Is it not written: ‘No prophet can arise from Galilee’?”

[3] **The better Pharisee said:** “Yes, yes, this is what is written, but it is nowhere written that the Messiah cannot arise from Galilee. Now, if He is the One, then he also is no prophet, but the Lord Himself, and then what is written in the Scripture does not apply to Him.”

[4] **The scribe said:** “Yes, if that would be so, then of course not, but who can prove that, and who would dare?”

[5] **The Pharisee said:** “He Himself, and now maybe already many hundred of thousands witnesses. The fact that we do not believe that, is not His fault. But this is an opportunity to show us that He is more than a prophet, and then we also want and will believe in Him.”

[6] **On this, the scribe did not say anything anymore, went outside to see how much damage the ever-spreading fire had already caused. But because the stormy wind continued to blow so heavily that anyone could hardly remain standing, and the flashes of lightning were also almost uninterruptedly flashing crisscross with loud thunder through the air and the thick clouds, the scribe and still another Pharisee who accompanied him, did not stay long outside as spectator but returned soon back into the hall and told the others that not much could be saved of the synagogue anymore**

since the fire had become too mighty and in this place there was too little water and too few brave people to extinguish it.

[7] However, **the better Pharisee** came to Me again and said: “Master, You have heard what I said to our scribe about You. He could not give me any valid answer, and so he preferred to remain silent, but he went outside anyway to see if perhaps it would still be worthy to extinguish the synagogue and thus to still save a few valuable things. Thereby he wanted to indicate that he also might believe in You if You would extinguish the fire in the synagogue by Your miraculous power and save also in this manner a few treasures. But since the vicious fire will now soon have consumed and destroyed everything, he will now think: ‘Neither with natural or with miraculous means can anything be saved anymore, and thus I will remain with my unbelief.’

[8] But what concerns me, I think and conclude now quite differently, because for me the 2 signs which You have performed here are sufficient, namely firstly the cleansing of the 10 lepers and secondly the healing of the chief helper, and I believe that You are undeniably God’s anointed One and that therefore nothing is impossible for You. And therefore I believe also that if You want, You can calm down the storm and extinguish the fire in our synagogue and save that which is most necessary for us to live from. Lord and Master, forgive me if I have sinned against You before, and show at least to me that You are also Lord over the elements and the great nature.”

[9] **I** said: “Blessed are you, because you believe, and for you I also want to do according to your faith. Therefore, come with Me outside, then we will see what true faith can do.”

[10] Then I went with the better Pharisee outside and looked with him to the strong fire that was already raging into the whole building, and I said to him while he was standing without fear or fright with Me: “Do you still think and believe that it is possible for Me to calm down with 1 word this mighty storm, extinguish the fire and by that at least save your possessions?”

[11] Being full of confidence **the Pharisee** said: “Yes, Lord and

Master, only now I believe all that, without any doubt. Speak only 1 word, and infallibly will happen what You want.”

[12] **I said: “Well then will happen as you believe.”**

[13] **After I had said that, the storm lied down suddenly, and the fire in the synagogue extinguished in such a way that in the whole big building not even a little glowing spark could be found anymore.**

[14] **On this, the Pharisee fell down on his knees before Me and praised aloud God’s power and might in Me.**

[15] **But I indicated to him to stand up, because now all those who were driven to the big hall by fear and fright, began to come out because they could well notice that the storm had ceased entirely, and also through the window nothing could be discovered anymore of the fire in the synagogue.**

[16] **When the scribe with the other Pharisees noticed this, and also saw that the sky was cloudless, he said: “Listen, this is more than even the most wise man could ever dream. But what can we do? If we will believe in the Galilean, then the whole temple will soon come after us with burning clubs, and if we still do not believe Him now, then we have the people of the whole wide neighborhood against us. It will be difficult now to find the golden middle way and continue to walk on that. But let us talk about it further tomorrow. Now bring us light, so that we can convince ourselves what kind of damage we have suffered from the fire.”**

[17] **Then the innkeeper brought lights that were made of wax, and everyone went to the synagogue to see what the fire had destroyed. The Pharisees soon discovered that the fire had caused a big devastation in their home and began to lament heavily because of that. But when they came into the home of the better, believing Pharisee, where I was present with him, they were all stunned when they saw everything undamaged and in good order.**

45. IN THE DAMAGED SYNAGOGUE



WHEN the scribe came to Me and said: “Master, why did You not also protect our homes like this here?”

[2] **I** said: “Then why did you not also believe like this one here?”

[3] **The scribe** said: “How could we force ourselves to believe? To complete faith belongs a more solid conviction than we have from You. In this time, where all kinds of sorcerers and men of wonders are widespread it is difficult – namely for an old scribe – to discover the truth out of the many appearances that look alike and then to accept them as such without doubting and to believe them without doubting.”

[4] **I** said: “Then who forced this companion of yours to believe? And how did he discover the truth among the many false appearances? Look, this is not contained in the reason of man but in his better and more sincere heart.

[5] Already for a very long time you did not make it a matter of conscience anymore to lie and to deceive the people in all kinds of ways for your outer worldly advantage. But only he did not do that because the commandments of God still meant something to him and he did not distort them as you distorted them.

[6] There is no more faith in your heart, and therefore also no more truth of life, and that is the reason why you could not recognize Me and could not believe in Me, for if there is no truth and no life, even the most clear truth and its life cannot be absorbed and cannot obtain a permanent place to stay.

[7] But wherever there is still some truth and its life living in the heart of a person, then also a higher truth can easily receive room, which then brings forth the living faith and its power. And that was the case with this companion of yours, and so I let it happen as he believed. Here you have now basically the reason of your unbelief and hardness of your heart, which makes and keeps you blind like those of your kind all around the whole land of the Jews. Now I have spoken and I will return now to the inn.”

[8] To these words of Mine the scribe and his followers did not know anything to answer Me, and escorted by the converted Pharisee, the innkeeper and the healed chief helper I went directly to the inn where all the disciples were still sitting at the table and talked with each other about My teachings and deeds.

[9] The other Pharisees and the scribe were searching through the synagogue with the help of the lights together with certain servants of the innkeeper to find out about all the things that were destroyed by the fire. They also could have done that the next day but since they possessed much gold, silver and still other treasures that were very well hidden in the synagogue in the different corners and the holes of the wall, they wanted to convince themselves to what extent the fire had spared also the hidden treasures or not. When they zealously checked the corners and the holes of the walls and could still find this and that undamaged, they felt somewhat better, but still they set up good watchmen consisting of a few helpers of the innkeeper in return of a good reward, so that no one could steal anything from them and would make them even poorer then they thought to be now.

[10] In the mean time we were talking with each other about many things, which are not necessary to mention here since they already were sufficiently explained and clarified in the different places where they happened.

[11] It was more in particular our trip from Jericho to this place that was clearly and briefly explained by My disciples, by which the Pharisee, the innkeeper, his helper and his wife and a few of his adult children were extremely amazed, and **the Pharisee repeatedly exclaimed aloud:** “No, this is endlessly more than is needed to make even stones seeing. And my companions remain still blind and try to secure their pitiful worldly treasures while the highest and eternal everlasting treasures of life are being put here in the greatest abundance on the table. But what can we do when the Lord of life performs so often and in vain the greatest signs and gives teachings to the people that can only come from the heart and the mouth of God? Unfortunately I live amidst wolves and I

must howl together with them to prevent being torn to pieces by them, but from now on they will not be able to make me howl anymore, for now I surely know what to do.”

[12] **While our Pharisee was still making similar exclamations, also the scribe came and wanted to say that the fire did still not destroy a considerable amount of treasures.**

[13] **But the Pharisee stood up to them immediately and said:** “I beseech you to keep quiet on this holy place concerning the worldly filth of the greatest damnation. That filth has made men devils and has thrown their souls into the pool of eternal death. But here among us is the Lord of life who possesses all might over everything in Heaven and on Earth, and He has come to free us from the old yoke of Hell and eternal death, by His love, mercy and more than great compassion, and you try to secure the filth of Hell so that you then will be more blind, hardened and more dead in your soul than you are already now. Here are the gates of Heaven wide open, and you and the other companions make efforts to sustain Hell for yourselves. O, what must the blindness of your souls and the hardness of your heart be great.

[14] Ask yourself: who can the One be to whom are obeying winds, storms, flashes of lightning, fire and other elements and powers of nature? I have recognized Him and am therefore now more than happy. Why do you still not recognize Him who can destroy you with the lightest breath of His almighty will or can cast you into Hell? Because with your body and soul you stick to the evil filth of the world and are death and blind in your heart.”

46. THE SPIRITUAL DARKNESS OF THE SCRIBE



WHEN the scribe heard this from our converted Pharisee he outwardly became displeased, but inwardly he thought it over and said after a while: “Happy the one to whom an

open heart has been given. Until now it has not been given to me. I surely have studied the Scripture and searched for the truth. Can I help it when I was not able to find it? What was the use when I read: ‘God has said this and that to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob and to still many others, and has revealed Himself by Moses and by the other prophets to the people?’ Why did He not speak to me and many other people of my kind? Am I perhaps less human being than those to whom God has spoken and to whom He has revealed Himself?

[2] Only now a Man has risen again to show us that the Scripture is not merely a fable that was invented and made up by imperious people, and that there is a God to whom all Heavens and all might and powers of nature are submitted. And therefore it is also time to think and to search how and why God has now again awoken a Man who shows us through deeds and words that the Scripture is the truth and no fable.

[3] I did not become a human being by my own will and my own power, but by an inscrutable will and its equally inscrutable power and might. Can I help it when that power and might did not guide me in such a way that I never had to doubt their existence? So let me think now, to find the way in myself along which the ancient truth can be recognized again. Only after that you can speak with me.”

[4] **Then the converted Pharisee said:** “How great must the blindness of someone’s heart and also his mind be when after such phenomena and especially after such lessons he still wants to think about it and accurately wants to consider if and how God can come to the point to give again a sign of His almighty existence to the people of this Earth in this time, and if that sign is completely true. O Lord and Master, full of pure divine power, be also forgiving

and merciful to the blind and hardened ones.”

[5] I said: “Friend, leave it alone, for in this world everything must have its time. In the soul of your companion there is still too much of the gold and silver of this world, and the Kingdom of God cannot so easily find a little place there, compared to those whose soul have not become hardened and blind by the mammon of this world. He blames God that He has neglected him, but he does not consider that he also has received a lot and meaningful warnings from God, which could have given him a great light for his soul if from childhood on he would not be filled with all kinds of lusts for gold and silver.

[6] He was already in the temple at the time when the obvious miracle took place with the high priest Zechariah who was strangled between the altar and the most holy place, because he criticized and abolished the great abuse and deceptions of the imperious Pharisees and their loyal followers. He was also in the temple when Simeon and the old Anna lived, and he heard their words. He was also still in the temple when I as a 12 year old boy gave the absolutely unmistakable signs of the Spirit that dwells in Me, and he knew John, the penance preacher in the desert who was a son of Zechariah and the old, pious Elisabeth.

[7] Because of mere gold and silver he did not recognize the light from the Heavens, although it was directly within reach for thousands. He surely thought a lot with his brains, but when the heart is hardened and darkened by sheer mammon, what can a soul do with such thinking that looks like a volatile false light? Although it is as a flash of lightning, illuminating the night for one moment, but immediately after that, it brings a much deeper darkness than the one that was covering the earth’s surface before.

[8] Truly, I say to you: if such light of reason in man is already complete darkness, then how deeply dark must be the actual night of the heart and of the soul himself. Just let this scribe search for the Kingdom of God with his false light. The longer he will search for it in this manner, the less he will find it. As long as he will not make his heart, and by that also his soul completely free from the

mammon, he will not enter God's Kingdom.

[9] His words look like those of a blind person who also partly blames God for the fact that he is blind and does not understand that other people are able to see since he himself can see nothing. However for someone who is physically blind such words can be excused if he did not make himself willfully blind, but with someone whose soul is blind, such words cannot be excused since already for a long time he could have become seeing just like many other people if he faithfully would have used the means that are well known to him. But we will let it rest now. Tomorrow there is also time to talk about the means with which the inner light can be attained. The 4 hours that we still have left tonight we will use to let our body rest.”

[10] The innkeeper quickly asked if I wanted to go to a private bedroom.

[11] **I** said: “We will stay here at the table, because most of My disciples are already sleeping here anyway and the lamps are going out.”

[12] The innkeeper was satisfied with that.

[13] Also the Pharisee wanted to stay with us, but **the scribe said to him**: “Just come with me to your home that remained undamaged. Tonight I will stay with you and still discuss about many things with you.”

[14] **The Pharisee said**: “Very well, but not much discussing will be achieved for the rest of the night, for also my eyelids are beginning to weigh heavy.”

[15] **The scribe said**: “Come now, that does not matter. Just let us go and rest. Maybe a good dream is waiting for us that can tell us more than what we can say to each other, because at such exciting occasions I still have always had very peculiar dreams, and also this time I surely will not be spared from it.”

[16] **With these words, they both left and took their nightly rest.**

47. THE DREAM OF THE SCRIBE



IN the morning when the sun was already rising above the mountains and I and the disciples were as usual already outside, also the Pharisee and the scribe woke up. They washed themselves according to the strict custom of the Jews, and the Pharisee asked then to the scribe if he perhaps had a dream.”

[2] **He said (the scribe):** “Yes friend, as I said before we went to sleep, but I only dreamt foolish things that were mixed up.

[3] Listen: I was between high mountains, and wherever I was looking, I saw only gold- and silver mines, and I saw a lot of mineworkers who took those metals in big lumps out of the mountains. However, when I saw that metal in such great quantities before me, it lost all its value for me, and when the mineworkers brought up more and more of that metal to the daylight I became scared, and I began to look for a way out. But wherever I went to escape from it, the way was always blocked with the biggest lumps of gold and silver, so that it was impossible to get over it and to find a way out.

[4] Then in my great fright and almost complete desperation I turned to a mineworker who was standing near to me and I asked him to show me a way out from that gold- and silver canyon.

[5] But with a very rude voice he cried out to me: ‘There is no way out here! Who once gets lost in this canyon will come out of it no more, for we can immediately see when someone ends up with us, and we are blocking him the way out as soon as he admires our treasures. Already many mighty and prominent people have found their downfall in this canyon, and you will not be one of the last.’

[6] After these very threatening words of that rude mineworker who then walked immediately away from me, my fear and fright were at the top, and because of that I lost conscience completely and fell to the ground, and in that bad condition I came into a new dream again.

[7] Then a man came to me who asked me with a serious voice what I was doing in that place.

[8] I said: ‘Why do you ask me, I do not even know when, how and why I came here, for I never wanted that, and nevertheless I am here.’

[9] Then the man disappeared, and soon after that, I saw a malicious animal coming at me. Then I became even more frightful. However, I saw a lightning from the sky which hit that evil animal of which I cannot describe its shape. It started to twist around and to rear, and soon it fell into the deep abyss, and I felt more at ease.

[10] I stood up and hurried away from that spot, to a little place that was rather far away from me, and it seemed to be friendly and inviting. Soon I came near that little place. I saw very beautiful gardens where there were a big number of all kinds of fruit trees, which I did not know and of which the branches and twigs were full of the most extraordinary fruits.

[11] In one of those gardens I also saw women and girls of great beauty, and I lusted to talk to them. But my lust was soon over, because when the girls and the women saw me, they started to scream and they ran away from me.

[12] I thought by myself: ‘Why is that?’

[13] Then I heard a voice from a hidden place: ‘This is our enemy! Flee away from him, so that here also he will not take away from us our possessions, our chastity and innocence! You, our men, grab him and bind him firmly, and throw him into a dungeon where frogs and snakes are dwelling!’

[14] When I heard that, I started to run over stones and stubbles. Finally I was so tired that I fell to the ground, and then I woke up.

[15] Truly, that certainly was a foolish and bad dream, and I am still completely wet from the sweat of fear over my whole body.

[16] What do you say now, friend, of this bad-foolish dream of mine?”

48. THE PHARISEE EXPLAINS THE DREAM



HE Pharisee said: “Friend, the dream that you have explained to me now does not seem to be so bad-foolish as you think, and according to me it has a very deep meaning of life for you, which I could make clear to you in a few words.”

[2] **The scribe said:** “Then do it, I gladly want to listen to you.”

[3] **The Pharisee said further:** “Listen: the gold- and silver canyon that made you so frightful and out of which you could find no more way out, showed you the condition of your soul who is armored with sheer lust for gold and who despite all his thinking and searching can find no more way out from that condition to the free space of the pure and living truth from God. The mineworkers that you saw, who took the mentioned metals in big lumps out of the mountains, are your own insatiable lusts for such earthly treasures. And the mineworker who said to you that there is no way out from that canyon, and who told you not very softly that you will certainly go to your downfall, is your own conscience that was – as if for the last time – seriously warning you because you did not pay anymore attention to his softer admonishing voice.

[4] **Then you became so frightful and afraid that you fell unconsciously to the ground. That is a sign for you, which according to me you should understand this way: because you began to despise and escape your lust, and by that removed the armor of your soul, you have given up your old love, and thus also your material life, and you fell as if dead to the ground. And because you have done that, soon another and already more free life opened up in you.**

[5] The man who soon came to you and who asked you a very important question that you could not answer, was again your conscience – your spirit of the beyond from God. When he walked away from you, you immediately saw an evil animal that was nothing else than your old lust, which despite the more free condition of your soul was chasing after you in your mind. But

because you now abhor your old sin, even its remembrance is detestable and despising to you, and you make effort to flee that evil animal, so that it would not grab you again and bring you to your downfall and kill you. Your justified fright for your evil animal is seen by Heaven, and this sends a lightning of the living truth from God. It hits your evil animal so well that after rearing and twisting itself for a moment, it finally falls into the abyss and does not appear anymore in your soul.

[6] Now, still at great distance, a pleasant little place is shown to you and it makes you feel completely at ease. You hurry to that place and to the very beautiful gardens in the neighborhood that are abundant with exceptional fruit trees and fruits. That comfortable place is the rest that came back to you, and the gardens represent the new truths from God that are very pleasant to you. But since they are not your property because you still are not acting accordingly, you still see them as it were outside of yourself and you dare not take the fruits.

[7] In one garden you also saw very beautiful women and girls to whom you gladly wanted to talk to and make acquaintance. But when they, who are the deepest living truths, saw you as a purely outer man of reason, they run away, and you thought: ‘Why do they not want me, why are they running away from me?’ Then your conscience wakes up again and it shows you how poor you are in works of love for God and your fellowman, and how much injustice that you have done to the poor widows and orphans that you still have to make up for, for which your reason is still backing away.

[8] Then your conscience says again: ‘Grab him and bind him’ – which means your outer reason – ‘and throw him in a dark dungeon where snakes and frogs are dwelling’. In other words, this means as much as: you yourself, imprison your worldly reason by means of the living faith in God and His Anointed One who came to us, and banish it and give it back to the dark world and its poisonous worries, for out of the Word of God a new and pure spiritual reason must appear, otherwise you cannot enter the place

of the comforting rest of the soul.

[9] Then you are fearful again because you think that in your outer reason you possess your whole life, and therefore you still flee for a while over the hard and dead stubbles and stones that are the stumbling blocks. Those stubbles and stones are the foolish things of the worldly wisdom that makes you tired and fall down again. Happy are you when through this fall you become as awake in the spirit of the full truth from God as you now woke up again from your good and for you very meaningful dream back to the earthly physical life.

[10] Look, this is how I have seen the meaning of your dream, and I have told you without any restraint. But if I have felt it correctly, this explanation did not completely come out of myself, for I clearly had the idea that a higher Spirit has put the words in my heart and mouth. And I believe also that the Spirit of the One to whom all powers of the Heavens and all elements of this Earth are obeying – as we have seen – did bring you into this dream condition.

[11] But still, you can believe what you want. I have spoken, and I will now immediately search for and see what the great Master is doing, but you can now do what you want.”

[12] **The scribe, who was very surprised about this dream explanation, said:** “Listen, I will do what you will do. So let us go.”

49. THE 2 TEMPLE SERVANTS SEARCH FOR THE LORD



WHEN the 2 came out of the house they saw the place where the big fire had raged, and how their companions were busy gathering their treasures that were still not destroyed by the fire and bringing them to a safe place.

[2] **One of them shouted to the scribe (a temple servant):** “Are you really not worried about what belongs to you?”

[3] **The scribe said:** “That which is possibly mine I will receive soon enough, and if nothing can be found of what is mine then I

also will not grieve about that. You just continue to work for death, I will now search work for life.”

[4] After these words they the 2 continued their way.

[5] **The other Pharisees said among each other:** “Did that Galilean also make our only scribe crazy?”

[6] **But he did not pay attention to them and went with the completely converted Pharisee to the inn and wanted to speak to Me. But I was still outside with My disciples and thus not in the inn.**

[7] **When they the 2 saw that I was not there they asked the innkeeper – who was busy preparing the big dining table – where I was and if I had perhaps left the village.**

[8] **The innkeeper said:** “The Lord of life has still not left. He is somewhere outside with His disciples, but were, that I cannot tell you because He already left the hall before I woke up. But a few of His disciples carried traveling bags, which I still have for safekeeping, and this is a sign that the Lord has still not left this place, and I think that He will come back soon because the morning meal will soon be completely ready, which He certainly knows. But go outside and search for Him, for it is worthwhile to search for the Lord of life. I will do that myself as soon as I have set this table. My healed chief helper has already gone out.”

[9] **The Pharisee said:** “What are the 10 who were healed actually doing? Are they still here or did they already continue their trip?”

[10] **The innkeeper said:** “Oh, they already continued their trip at daybreak. Whereto, that also the Lord will know best.”

[11] **After these words, the 2 left immediately the hall and went on their way, hoping to find Me somewhere. They walked through the market place and asked to a few people if they perhaps had seen Me, but no one could tell them.**

[12] **At the end of the market place they met a poor orphan child. They also asked the child if she perhaps had seen Me somewhere in the company of several men.**

[13] **The child said:** “O yes, there upon the hill in the direction of Kana are the unknown men sitting down, and One of them must be

someone important because He suddenly healed my eyes. You surely know that I was completely blind since birth and how my poor mother put me every day before the gate of the market place to beg for alms.”

[14] The 2 gave generously to the child and let her now happily go to her mother who soon saw her child. She was very surprised, ran to her and asked her questions about everything.

[15] And the 2 walked quickly to the hill and came to us right at the moment when we stood up from the ground to return to the inn.

[16] When they came to us, they greeted Me most kindly and asked Me if they could stay with Me.

[17] I said: “If you want you can stay. We will now take another way to the inn and will not pass through the market place, for I have made the blind girl seeing. She will now, together with her mother, tell this to everyone, and if we would go now through the market place, all the people would crowd together round us to see and to praise Me, which I want to prevent now. So let us go.”

[18] After these words of Mine, we soon left the hill, took a little detour and went as fast as possible to the inn.

[19] When we entered the hall, the innkeeper just wanted to search for Me also because he had finished setting the table. Since we arrived before him, he asked Me to forgive him for the fact that he had been so slow. But I reassured him and said that he now could let the morning meal be set on the table, which also happened immediately. We sat down at the table and we cheerfully partook of the well-prepared meal.

[20] During the meal, also the healing of the blind girl was discussed, about which the innkeeper was surprised again, and he immediately wanted to send someone to the poor girl and her mother. But I advised him not to do this for the moment because of the sensation that it would cause, but when I would be away from the village, there still would be enough time to think about the poor. And this the innkeeper did.

50. THE WINE MIRACLE AND ITS RESULTS



WHEN the innkeeper heard that I soon wanted to leave the village, he became sad and said: “O Lord and Master, I hope that You will not leave our village today?”

[2] **I** said: “Friend, there are still a lot of blind and deaf ones of heart and soul. I also should go to them and help them. As it was good for you that I came to you, so it will also be good for many when I go to them. But I still will stay a few hours in your house, and during that time still many things can be discussed. But let us now set again a fresh, pure wine on the table.”

[3] **The innkeeper** said: “O Lord and Master, a fresh, pure and better wine I do not have in none of my cellars. What can be done about that?”

[4] **I** said: “Just go to the cellar, which is located under this hall, then you surely will find some wine.”

[5] **The innkeeper** said: “O Lord and Master, it is true that here under this hall is an old cellar, but there are only old, almost useless cellar utensils like sacks of wine, pitchers and still other vessels. But there is no trace of wine.”

[6] **I** said: “Exactly from that cellar you must bring wine for us, so that you and all who are here in your house will notice still more than was the case until now that no Essene is ever capable to do such things, as the scribe stills thinks within himself.”

[7] **Then the innkeeper** said: “O Lord and Master, besides our scribe, certainly no one in my whole house thinks this way anymore. I believe that the fullness of God’s Spirit is bodily living within You. Your will is His will and Your word is His word, and therefore everything that You say is an eternal truth, light, life and as good as an accomplished word. And so I believe then also that there is wine in that old cellar, and even the very best kind.”

[8] **I** said: “Then go down and bring us some.”

[9] **Then the innkeeper** took 2 big pitchers, as well as the chief helper, went to the mentioned cellar and there they saw to their great amazement all the old sacks, about 150 pieces, all pitchers

and other vessels, which were now in good condition, full with the best of wine. They both tasted the wine and they thought it to be extremely good and with a delicious taste. They filled the 4 pitchers that they took along, brought the wine to the table and filled our cups that were already empty.

[10] **The Pharisee** was the first to empty his cup to the last drop, and said then to his companion, who did not really dare to drink of the miracle wine that perhaps was enchanted: “You should try this wine also, so that you also may perceive that the profession of faith of our innkeeper is true.”


[11] Then also the scribe took his cup, tasted the wine, and because it tasted so delicious to him, he also emptied his cup to the last drop.

[12] When **the scribe** had completely emptied his cup, he said: “Truly, this is one of those signs that cannot be explained in any other way. Healing all kinds of diseases only by an extremely firm faith and an unbendable will, all that existed already according to old legends and traditions among the people, because in some places exist – although very few – entirely unspoiled men who possess an extremely great and equally strong power of life. When these men want to act upon a sick person, the sick person will as it were be permeated and filled with a stream of life’s fire and can become healthy in one moment. We know many things about such healings from the old scriptures of almost all nations that are known to us. So we know also that there are people who, depending on their good or evil will could do all kinds of magic in bright daylight, and could do also other things that must have seemed extraordinary to a normal person. But to firstly restore old, empty wine sacks and other vessels to their useful state, only through the will, and then to fill them with the purest, best wine, that is something about which none of all the chronicles and old legends cannot say anything. So this I consider as a supernatural sign that could not be accomplished without a great abundance of true divine power. And now I also begin to believe that You are truly the anointed One of God.”

[13] **I** said: “It will be good for you if you believe that, but those who will say in their belief ‘Lord, Lord’ and ‘Master’ to Me, will however not entirely enter My Kingdom of Life, but only those who will act and live according to My teaching. Because My words are life and divine power if they are executed with deeds by man, but for those who hear the words and keep them also into their memory, but do not act and live accordingly, they are useless for the eternal life of their soul, but on the contrary, they will be to them as a judgment, which is the other death in the other life. Now I have told you, so that no one can excuse himself, saying that he did not know it.”

[14] **Then the scribe** said: “Lord and Master, it is not difficult for us to believe that, and by the signs that You have accomplished here, we are completely convinced that Your words are the full truth, but how can those be convinced of the truth who will hear Your teaching from us and for whom we will not be able to do any signs as definite confirmation of the truth that is contained in Your teaching?”

51. ABOUT THE TREE OF LIFE AND THE TREE OF KNOWLEDGE

 SAID: “Firstly the truth will remain one and the same truth, even without signs, and whoever will live and act accordingly will become deeply inside aware that My teaching is divine and not a human word.

[2] Secondly, those who will transmit My teaching about the Kingdom of God in man to others and who will not only be teachers but who they themselves will also do My will that is clearly contained in My teaching, will also be capable to perform signs in My name, and even greater signs than *I am performing Myself*.

[3] But as mere teachers and not as men who apply My teaching themselves, they will not be able to perform signs because the power to perform signs does not come from the reason but from

the living faith and the firm will to act. Because the reason of the brains is a dead worldly light of man that can never penetrate into the most inner regions of life of the spirit and its power. And the living faith in the heart is the true light of life of the soul that awakens the spirit in him and takes care that it will penetrate into the whole person. And once man is permeated of the Spirit, then he is also permeated of its all-capable power. And whatever the living Spirit wants, which forms then one being with the soul, happens, and the will is then already an accomplished work.

[4] Therefore it is also stated in the Scripture that God put 2 trees in the garden of life: a tree of life and a tree of knowledge, and said to man: ‘If you will only eat the fruits of the tree of life, you will live, but if you also will eat the fruits of the tree of knowledge before it will be blessed by Me for you, then death will come over you and you will die.’

[5] But man – since he had a completely free will – let himself be seduced by the snake of his lust, and ate of the tree of knowledge even before it was blessed by the ripeness of the faith in the heart of man. That means: he searched and tried to grasp the Spirit of God, and so also the Spirit of life, with his natural reason. The result of it was that by that he only withdrew himself more and more from God instead of drawing more and more close to Him. And that was already death, that means the spiritual death of man, and the whole man became powerless and lost the authority over all things in the natural world and was forced to work for and to acquire his feeding bread with the help of the weak glowing of his brains’ reason in the sweat of his face, physically and even more so spiritually.


[6] And look, until now, men withdrew so far away from God, and thus also from the true inner life, that they now believe almost no more in a God, and thus also not in a continuance of life of the soul after the body has fallen away. And those who still believe mechanically in a God, or through a blind superstition in many gods – just like the heathens – imagine God or the gods to be so endlessly far away from them, that finally it seems

impossible to them that a human being could ever come close to the God of whom they believe that He is so endlessly far away from him.

[7] And now that God Himself has physically come to men in all the fullness of His eternal might and power, and with all His love and wisdom, they do not see that, and in their great blindness and foolishness they consider this as impossible, while nevertheless with God all things are possible. And because He reveals Himself now with a physical mouth and not with lightning and thunder, they consider God Himself now as a blasphemer and a malicious agitator of the people against God and against the kings of the world who consider themselves to be gods and who also let themselves be honored as such by men.

[8] And look, all this is the result of the fact that all men preferred to eat the dead fruit of the tree of knowledge instead of the living and life-giving fruit of the tree of life.”

52. ‘ADAM, WHERE ARE YOU?’ – AN IMPORTANT QUESTION

 HE question that God asked Adam when he already ate of the forbidden fruit and that sounded like this: ‘Adam (or ‘man’), where are you?’ still continues and will still continue until the end of this world, as long as there are people who prefer to eat from the tree of knowledge instead of from the tree of life.

[2] Because the person who eats from the tree of knowledge will very soon lose God, himself and his inner life, and he does not know anymore who he is, why he exists and what he should be. Then his soul is full of fright and fear, and to his question: ‘Man, where are you?’ he seeks the answer that would give him rest and comfort in the reason of the brains of his body. But then always the comfortless answer comes: ‘You are in the judgment, which is the real death of the soul. Acquire your bread in the sweat of your face.’

[3] What can the soul actually find in the brains? Nothing else except images of this world that are in the reason, and those images are all much further away from what is of the spirit and life than the soul himself. If the soul does not recognize the spirit of the life from God, which is always nearest to him, then how will he recognize in the brains of his physical head the spirit of the life from God, which is in the images of the world often endlessly much further away from him?

[4] Out of this complete error results inevitably and automatically the still greater error that the soul imagines the Being of God to be ever further away and unreachable, and this as long as he will totally get rid of it and after that will turn to Epicurism¹ or cynicism².

[5] In this condition in which most of the priests of all kinds are now – and now especially the Pharisees, the elders and scribes – and the princes and kings, together with their great following, the soul does not know the truth anymore. The lie is worth as much to him and even more than the purest truth, as long as through that he can get some earthly advantage. If one or the other truth would hinder him, then he will become hostile against it and will run away from it or will persecute it with fire and sword.

[6] When the soul is in such condition, sin does no more exist for him, and a person who can possess some worldly power can do whatever pleases him and whatever will flatter his senses. And woe to the righteous one or someone who lives in the truth of life, who would go to such mighty one and would say to him: ‘Why are you an enemy of the truth and why do you commit the greatest injustice that is crying to Heaven among the people, who are on this Earth no less than you, blind fool?’

[7] Just look around you into the world now whether this is not the case everywhere. And what is the reason of that? I say to you: nothing else except the ever increasing eating from the tree of

¹ Epicure: a person devoted to sensual pleasure and luxurious living.

² Cynic: a person who believes that all people are motivated by selfishness.

knowledge.

[8] I have come now Myself physically into this world to the people who turned too far away from the true goal of life, and ask them once again: ‘Adam, where are you?’ and no one knows what to answer Me as to where or who he is. And I am showing them now again the tree of life and urge them to take from its fruits and to satiate themselves with them.

[9] Truly I say to you: whoever will eat from the tree of life will also come to the true life of the Spirit out of Me, and he will never again be hungry or desire to eat from the tree of death, because once someone is in the life of the Spirit out of Me, will also be in all its wisdom, and only then will the tree of knowledge be blessed through that, and the soul will know in one moment more than if he would investigate for 1,000 years with his outer and vain reason.

[10] When you will be in the condition of the true life, you will also perform signs in My name, and in this manner you will be able to give everyone a testimony of the truth of My teaching – if that will be necessary. Did you, scribe and friend, understand this well now?”

53. THE LORD SPEAKS ABOUT HIS INCARNATION



HE scribe said: “Yes, Lord and Master, but I am standing now as if completely annihilated before You, for what is man compared to You?”

[2] **I** said: “Just look at My disciples. They are already more than 2 years continually around Me and know Me certainly much better than you now, but not one of them stood annihilated before Me.

[3] It is true that to Moses, when he wanted to see Jehovah’s face, it was said: ‘No one can see God and keep his life at the same time’, that means the life of his body. But at that time it was only regarding the eternal Spirit of God, since God did not yet assume a body at that time, for according to His eternal order it was not yet the time for that.

[4] But now, according to the prediction of the prophets, Jehovah has assumed the body of men of this Earth, and so between Himself, as the initial eternal Spirit, and men He placed a protective wall, so that they can see Him, touch Him, hear and talk to Him without causing damage to their life, and no one should be afraid to be annihilated by My visible presence.

[5] Although there was an endless gap between Me and you men by which even the most perfect angel spirit could not even approach Me, but now a bridge has been built across that gap, and that one is formed by the love for Me from your side, while I from My side have become a Man Myself of flesh and blood out of My eternally great and above all mighty love for you men, and have also taken your weaknesses upon Me, so that I will not be an eternally distant God, but that I can be a completely close and easy to reach Father, Friend and Brother, which you can become and stay according to the measure of your love for Me.

[6] If this is the case now between Me and you men, and thus completely different from the time of Moses, no one can say that he is annihilated by My divine majesty that lives in its fullness in Me, since I Myself am with all My heart meek and humble and full of the highest patience and tolerance, love and compassion. So take courage and do not have any unnecessary fear for Me who loved you already for a long time before you existed.”

[7] Now **the scribe** said with more courage and self-esteem: “But Lord and Master, how could You have loved me even before I existed?”

[8] I said: “Without My love no world and thus also no human being would have come into existence. All that which is contained in the endless space of creation is My love incarnated by My will, and so you certainly also *are part of it*.

[9] My love is eternal, and thus everything that has originated, originates and will eternally originate from it, is actually also *eternal*.

[10] The living spirit in man is My eternal love and wisdom that creates, arranges and maintains everything, and this spirit is

actually the true and in itself already eternal man in man, who, in order to become independent, covers himself, only in the course of time, with a soul and a body according to My eternal order in him, and steps thus into an outer visible form.

[11] Now if this is so and can impossibly be otherwise, you surely will realize that I have loved you already an eternally long time before you still were what you are now. You are now as if a spark of life that is separated from My love and you yourself can become a big and independent flame of love that looks like Me, by loving Me above all and your fellowman, who is completely equal to you, as yourself. And if this is what you are, and will then also love Me in this manner, you will soon see into yourself how I as the Eternal Love am everything in all and again everything is in Me. Do you understand this now?"

54. THE TRUE FEAR OF GOD



HE scribe said: "Somewhere deep in my heart I have the feeling that I understand it, but in my head everything is now mixed up, and I realize that such things can only be understood in the heart of the soul and never with the reason of the brains. But Moses commanded to fear God and to always pray to Him only. Do I not anymore have to fear and to worship You in the prescribed manner?"

[2] **I** said: "Yes, yes, Moses did prescribe that, and that was also good, but truly, in this time no one understands anymore what it means 'to fear God', and you priests taught the people completely untrue and totally wrong concepts about the fear of God, partly because of your own blindness but mostly because of your insatiable pursuit of profit. And so, the weak people who still believe a little in God, fear Him as a malicious, extremely relentless tyrant who lacks all love and mercy, and for the word and the concept 'God' they back away in fear because they can see in Him almost nothing else except eternal wrath and eternal vengeance.

[3] But it is also written that men should worship God and love Him above all. But how can a divine being be loved and through that also truly be worshiped if men already tremble before His name more than before death?

[4] Therefore, you surely will realize now what kind of untrue and extremely wrong concept you – and because of you, also the other people – have about the fear of God.

[5] What does it actually mean ‘to fear God’? To fear God means: to love God above all as the eternal, highest and purest love, and, because God is the highest truth, to remain in the divine truth and not to adhere to the lie of the world out of material self-interest.

[6] Whoever is truthful in everything has the true fear of God in his heart, and he who has that, will always worship God in the right way. For as the lie is a very great dishonoring of God, so also is the pure and living truth a continuous and highest glorification and truest worship of God. Do you understand that now?”

[7] **The scribe said:** “Yes, Lord and Master, for myself I do understand it now, and I surely realize that it can indeed not be otherwise, but it will not be that easy to make understand the truth to other people, because they are already stuck too deeply into all kinds of errors, and they take the lie for a truth. There is also the temple with its prescriptions as to what and how we should speak to the people. And so it will be difficult to become from now on a good teacher for the people. But to every victory must precede a battle. You, the Lord Himself have revealed the truth to us, and You will also support us in our battle against the enemies of the truth. We ask You now, and we will always ask You for this, for without Your help that is always present we will not be able to do anything.

[8] But now the question is how we should pray to You, so that You would hear us and help us. If we now would ask from You, while You are present, for something good, then You also would quickly and easily answer our prayer, but what will happen when You will not be personally present as You are now? Then how should we ask?”

[9] **I** said: “This question of yours looks still very Pharisaic. If you actively believe in Me, you will always receive what you will ask the Father in Me in My name. My personal visible presence is not necessary for that, for in spirit I am present everywhere and I see and hear everything, and everything – from the greatest to the smallest – I know very precisely and clearly.

[10] So if you will ask Me for something, in spirit and in the full truth, I will certainly also hear and answer you, but a prayer as it is custom with you, namely with the lips and in mysterious words, I will not answer.

[11] Because as a scribe you also know what God has spoken to the people through the mouth of a prophet when he turned to Him concerning the critical conditions of that time, so that He would answer their prayers: ‘I know you and the people who honor and pray to Me with the lips, but their heart is far away from Me.’ Look, so also from now on, a mere lip-prayer will never be heard, and least of all when it was paid for.

[12] However, the one who is full of living faith in his heart, and who will ask Me for something that is good, will also receive what he has asked for.

[13] And whoever will live and act in My name according to My teaching, he is the one who prays truthfully and unceasingly, and that is why whatever he needs will always be given to him.”

[14] **The scribe** said: “O Lord and Master, I thank You in my heart for Your comforting teaching, and I believe now that he who will pray for something according to Your will, which You have clearly spoken out now, will also receive what he asked for.”

55. PRACTICING FAITH AND TRUST



WHEN some of My disciples said: “Lord, all this would be fine if men in this world would not be exposed to temptations to commit sin. A person, in a weak moment, will easily commit one or the other sin, and then his trust and faith will already be weakened by that, and even if he repents

from the sin he committed and if he completely compensated for the possible damage he caused, then there is still a certain shyness in his soul so that he will not dare to turn to You in full faith compared to if he had not sinned.

[2] Then what should such person do in order to pray to You in such a manner that he can completely believe that You will answer him?"

[3] **I** said: "Such a person should know that I firstly am not a wrathful or revengeful God, but a patient and loving, meek God, as was already said through the mouth of the prophets, and as I am now calling to all sinners: 'Come all to Me, you who are tired and burdened with sins, for I want to comfort you all.'

[4] And secondly, men should always practice true prayer and persevere in it, because a right and firm trust will, through the right practice, be men's property, by which a disciple comes to mastership, no matter in what field.

[5] Someone who is well provided with all goods of this Earth will easily forget true and faithful praying. But when he is in need, then he will start to seek help from God through praying, but he feels too little trust in himself that God will answer him, and this is clearly because of a lack of practice in the living, full trust in God.

[6] And in what better way can a person strengthen his trust in God than through practicing, namely through unceasingly praying and asking? Of what the unceasing prayers and asking mainly consist I have made clear to you before."

[7] Now the disciples looked at one another, and **Andreas** said: "Lord, I still remember very well the image that You showed us on a similar occasion in which there was a beggar who knocked somewhere shamelessly *at a door* during the night and to whom the lord of the house in the middle of the night gave finally some bread out of the window anyway, more to get rid of any further lamenting and begging than out of true mercy.

[8] I have often thought about it myself concerning this somehow strange image, but I still could not reconcile it with Your highest love and mercy. But now it becomes clear to me, now that You

have talked about the unceasing praying and asking, and also about the practice of faith and trust in You.

[9] With the asking for bread during the night You certainly meant the practice of faith and trust in You, while with the initially somewhat deaf lord of the house You have represented Yourself, and with the beggar, us people, and You have shown that we should not cease to pray and to ask, also if You do not answer us immediately.

[10] You Yourself want it so, that through our unceasing praying and asking we really should become troublesome to You before You will hear us, because through that, You want that our trust in You will be increasingly exercised, by which we finally can become so strong that we can reach our own day of life, which is Your Kingdom in ourselves. Then in this, we ourselves, in the heart of our soul, will carry every help and power as Your children in Your Spirit and will, and we will not have to trouble You any further with begging in the night of our life. Because now, man seeks help in the weakness of his night of life, but once he himself has become strong and mighty, then he will be able to help himself. Lord, did I understand, according to the truth, the image that You gave before?"

**56. THE RESULT OF UNCEASING PRAYING.
THE PARABLE OF THE OPPRESSED WIDOW
AND THE HARD JUDGE.**



SAID: "You have understood the image very correctly and according to the truth, and it was fit to bring it forward again here with a few words. But to make the image that was mentioned by you even more understandable for everyone according to the view of one's own reason, and because this is still a good time for us now, I will give you another image with which you will see even more clearly how a true person should not cease praying and asking if he wants to attain to the true power of My Kingdom in himself. So listen.

[2] There was a judge in a city who did not fear God and who was afraid of no one. But there was also a widow in that same city. She came to him and said: ‘O righteous judge, save me from my adversaries, for look, like this and like that is the situation, and according to the law it is completely in my favor.’

[3] Also the judge was aware of that at first glance, but he was not in the right mood and did not want to accept the trial of the widow. But the widow did not stop, came several times to the judge and begged him on her knees to accept the case.

[4] Then the judge thought by himself: What shall I do? Even though I do not fear God, and also no human being – since this widow gave me already so much trouble I will save her, so that finally she will not come back even more often and make me completely dull with her begging.’

[5] Did you learn from that image of what the judge has said and done? And if already a judge, who judges strictly righteously according to the law, will hear the continuous begging of an oppressed widow and helps her, would God not sooner save His chosen ones who cry to Him day and night, and would He have less patience and love for them than the judge had for the widow?

[6] Truly I say to you: He will hear and save them shortly, in this time as well as in the future when He just as now will return to this Earth as the Son of Man.

[7] But when the Son of Man will return during that time to this world, do you think that He will find faith?”

[8] **Andreas** said: “Lord and Master, since I have spoken earlier, I shall also speak this time, if You will allow me.”

[9] **I** said: “You just can speak, because you have the right perception, courage and mouth for it.”

[10] Then **Andreas** said: “What concerns the image itself, it means the same as what I meant with the image of the lord of the house and the beggar for bread in the night, which I just related again. But the position of God regarding the worldly people who seek help with Him in the oppression of their night of life, was pointed out still more clearly than in the other image that was

related by me again. Because in that image God appears in a certain way only as a righteous judge without any bond, who can always help the oppressed people whenever He wants – and He also helps them – but only after they have really troubled Him with their unceasing begging.

[11] Also here it is only a matter of the practice of faith and trust. Once this has attained a certain unbendable power, then also the prayer is answered and the help is also there.

[12] You still added something. You said that God, as a loving Father, would certainly hear sooner His chosen ones, who are already in the power of faith and trust, if they would ask Him for help in their inner day of life to which they have already attained, but also in their night which can still easily come back now and then. Here You do not appear anymore as an almost relentless worldly judge who, because he himself is God, should not fear God and also no human being, but as a Father of those who have already attained to their inner day of life. This is how I understood it and I believe that I am not mistaken.

[13] At this moment none of us is still completely in his inner day of life, but partly sometimes also for a great deal in our old night of life, and we still have many things to ask You in order to practice faith and trust, and thus to become stronger. However, You have promised us a sure and fast salvation, and we believe also without any doubt that each of Your promises will be fulfilled.


[14] But You told us again about a second coming to this Earth, and at the end You asked the question whether You would find faith among the people.

[15] Well now, to give an answer to Your question is still entirely beyond our understanding, and so I cannot give You an answer on this. However, You Yourself will know best how the condition of the faith of men will be in the far future, and if You want You can tell us still more precisely than You have done on several other occasions.”

[16] **I said: “You have also well understood this present-day image**

completely according to the truth, and by that you truly made My heart happy. If you all will also do it that way, the complete salvation of your souls from the yoke of the matter of this world and its enticements will not delay.”

57. THE CONDITION OF FAITH IN THE FUTURE

UT what concerns My question about the condition of faith with men in the still faraway future, when the Son of Man will come again to the Earth, in the manner that I have often told you, I say that in general He will find even less living faith than now. For during that time men will have made great progress in many sciences and all kinds of technologies, mostly because of their tireless investigating and calculating under the twigs and extensive branches of the tree of knowledge, and they will achieve great things with the powers of the nature of the Earth, which are now still completely hidden for men, and they will say: ‘Look, that is God – there is no other one.’

[2] So the faith of those people will have almost completely disappeared. Thus, with those people I will find no more faith at My return.

[3] Another great part of men will be in a still much denser and darker idolatrous superstition than now all the heathens on the whole Earth. For a long time they will have their teachers, representatives and protectors among the great and mighty ones of the Earth of that time, but the children of the world who will be well equipped with all sciences and technologies will suppress the very dark superstition with all force, and will bring the great and mighty ones of the Earth into extreme embarrassment, because through science and all kinds of technologies the people that was kept blind with all force will realize that they were only kept in hard bondage for the sake of the worldly fame and the comfortable life of those great and mighty ones who had no faith themselves. And when I will come, also with them I will find no faith.

[4] In that time of great darkness I will not find faith with them

because they were the most foolish and most blind helpers of those who dominated them, who could very well perceive for which purpose the completely blind ones could be used for, and that those who could see would never tolerate that, as did the completely blind ones. But once the blind will also be made seeing by the scientists and technologists, then they will become followers of those who liberated them for the greatest part from the hard bondage of the great and mighty ones. And if I then would come and say: 'Listen, nations of the Earth, I have come now again to you and will show you again the right way to the eternal life of your souls,' then what will those men answer who are without any faith?

[5] They will answer Me: 'Friend, no matter who you are, stop that old, worn-out stupidity that has luckily evaporated, for which many streams of often completely innocent blood has fled since the time that it appeared for the first time. If that so-called good Father in Heaven, who we do not know and for whom we feel completely no desire anymore, is such a great friend of blood, then He certainly will easily be able to change the great ocean into blood and extremely delight in it. However, we absolutely do not need anymore such life's teaching, which instead of the promised Kingdom of God has only brought sheer Hell among the people on this Earth, which is already meager anyway. We adhere now to the sciences and technologies of all kind, and thereby we live in peace and rest, even though that on which we trust is only timely, a timely but peaceful and quiet life is much more dear to us now than a Heaven with all its beautiful bliss that was bought with countless sufferings and many streams of innocent blood that fled and which is moreover still doubtful.

[6] With such words of men at that time, My question, if at My return on Earth I will find any faith, is very justifiable.

[7] 'But' – you think now within yourselves – 'yes, whose fault will that be? Maybe of Hell? Lord, in that case, destroy it. Or maybe of the false, selfish prophets, who will be used as pretext by the different great and mighty ones who will soon come up as

mushrooms out of the humid soil, and who will go into all directions over the Earth with war, and will torment men? Lord, in Your name, let those false prophets never arise. But if You want it that way, You also should agree that You will not find any faith among men when You will return again.’

[8] On this I say: although the shortsighted human reason thinks correctly according to its understanding, and in a worldly human sense not much can be objected, but God, the Creator and eternal Maintainer of all things and beings has in His turn very different views and plans with all that which He has created out of Himself, and therefore He knows the very best why He allows some things to happen among men on this Earth.

[9] Finally all superstition will be wiped away from the face of the Earth with the arms of science and technology, by which still the free will of no human being will be hindered in the least.

[10] By that, in the course of time, all faith will become lost among men, but that condition will only last for a very short time.

[11] In that time only I will bless the old tree of knowledge, and by that the tree of life in man will receive again its old power, and from that time on, there will only be 1 Shepherd and 1 flock.

[12] He who has understood this now will also understand My question if I, during that time, will find the same faith as now on Earth. Such faith as now I will certainly not find anymore during those future times, but a different one. Of which it consists, you cannot imagine now, but nevertheless, once it will happen as I have told you now beforehand.”

58. THE NEW TIME



NE of the so-called **Jewish Greeks** said: “Lord and Master, at Your second coming to this Earth will there also be a teaching given to the people? If You will again come with this teaching, then they also will say: ‘Oh, go away with that teaching that caused so much misfortune on Earth.’”

[2] **I** said: “Friend, the teaching that I am giving to you now is God’s Word and remains eternally, and therefore the people about which we are talking now will only receive the teaching from Me that you have received from Me, but at that time it will not be given to them in veiled form, but completely revealed according to its heavenly and spiritual meaning, and from that the New Jerusalem will exist that will come down from the Heavens to this Earth. Only in its light it will become understandable to the people how much their predecessors were misled and deceived by the false prophets, just as the Jews are now deceived by the Pharisees.

[3] Then they will not blame Me and My teaching anymore for all the great misfortunes, but the extremely selfish and imperious false teachers and prophets. In the light of their sciences and many technologies they will very well perceive whose spiritual children they are.

[4] When the very bright light of the New Jerusalem will shine over the whole Earth, the liars and cheaters will be completely unveiled, and the reward for their work will be given to them. The higher one of them thinks to be standing, the deeper will be his fall. Therefore, beware already now for the false prophets. Did you well understand this now?”

[5] Then also My other **disciples** said: “Lord and Master, why do You actually not give us Your teaching also unveiled as You once will give in the far future to the mentioned scientists and technologists of all kind? I think that the people need this kind of New Jerusalem also now”

[6] **I** said: “I still have many things to say and to reveal to you, but all of you can still not bear it, but when the Spirit of truth out of

Me will come over you it will guide you into all truth and wisdom, and then you will be completely in the light of the New Jerusalem.

[7] However, if you will then be capable to transmit the light to your disciples, that is another question which you hardly will be able to answer, assuming that you will understand and realize that every teaching must firstly be given in a certain way to children and that it should be more free than coerced, and secondly that it cannot be expected from anyone to read the Scripture when he does not know the letters.

[8] You cannot suspect in the least what kind of great and extensive sciences and technologies men will once achieve, and how much every superstition among the people will be cleared by that. Where in the whole world can you now find a pure science that is based on the principles of the well-calculated truth, and where can you find a calculated technology of such a science?

[9] When there is now among the people any science, and a technology that is derived from it, it consists of more than $\frac{3}{4}$ of blind superstition. On such rotten fruit of the tree of knowledge that is still not blessed, no higher heavenly truth can be placed. And if you would place it upon it, there will appear a fruit that one could surely throw as food for the dragons, but could not be given as food for the people.

[10] See and remember well: out of such fruits, also the false prophets with all their erroneous teachings and false signs of wonder will arise and will spoil more than $\frac{3}{4}$ of the Earth. For when they will make effort to unite My teaching of truth with the sciences that exist now among the people, which are mixed with all kinds of superstition and insignificant achievements of technology – thinking that this teaching of truth will become more acceptable to the people – then obviously they will spoil My teaching more and more, and the sciences and technologies that are full of superstition will sink thereby even deeper into the ancient night than since the very beginning of men. Finally for a time they will become exclusively the property of the false prophets, and so with that help they can more easily and on a larger scale win the

people that were kept blind.

[11] But it will not stay like that, for at the right moment I will awaken men for the pure sciences and technologies, and then they will proclaim it from the rooftops to the people how the servants of Balaam have done their wonders. Thus the pure science in all things, and also the pure technology will become the invincible forerunner and advocate against the old superstition, and when the Augean stables will be cleansed by that, I will be able to come back easily and very efficiently to this Earth. Because My pure teaching of life will unite easily with the pure science of men everywhere and in this manner a complete light of life will be given to men, because one purity can never soil the other, just like one truth that is clear as the sunlight cannot soil the other.”

59. THE GRADUAL CLEANSING OF SCIENCES AND TECHNOLOGIES



ow you think of course within yourselves: ‘What will be possible to Me in that time, namely to cleanse science, I could also do now, and through that the pure teaching, united with the pure science and its technical inventions would pass on to the people like hand in hand, and then the false prophets, who want to perform here and there, will certainly not be able to do any business to satisfy their selfishness.’

[2] But to this I say to you: it would be very good if it would happen that way, but still it will not happen as you were saying with good intentions, for in that case I will have to take away the free will of men and transform them into mere machines with the almightiness of My will. And to what benefit would that be for the eternal salvation and life of their souls?

[3] Do you still not know that everything that is under the law of coercion, which exists in the almightiness of My will, is in itself judged and dead? I have explained this to you so often and in detail already so many times, and despite that you still relapse into your old worldly reason.

[4] Look, if I now in this time would immediately awaken thousand times thousand scientists of all kind among the people, who would possess the purest science in all things and would also be developed throughout according to that science, then they would be even more persecuted by the people of today than you who will soon become the spreaders of My teaching and will be persecuted by the dark worldly people because of My name. Because the knowledge of the people, which – as already said – is for more than $\frac{3}{4}$ mixed with the deepest of superstition and with which men are acquiring their material benefits, is much more difficult to cleanse.

[5] On many occasions I have well, visibly and in detail explained to you the different things, appearances and events, as I also have done for other people who had a good will and a receptive heart. I have revealed before your eyes and ears the whole starry sky in such a way that you surely know now what our sun, the moon, the planets and the numberless other stars are and what their characteristics are, and several of them I let you visit by opening your inner spiritual eyes. And so you possess now all the purest knowledge in a lot of things.

[6] But just go and teach it to the blind people in the manner in which I have taught you, then you will all too soon experience how difficult it is to dissuade people from their old knowledge and their mystical prejudices.

[7] Moreover there are numerous people who were made dumb by their selfish priests and rulers in such a way that they would consider such clarification of knowledge as an unforgivable crime against the gods, and they would seriously harm those who seduced them to commit a crime against the gods.

[8] In order to bring about a complete cleansing of the sciences in the course of time and the resulting technologies, first My teaching should be proclaimed to them, and the many idols together with their priests and temples should be destroyed.

[9] Once this has happened and My gospel has been proclaimed to the people – even though through many false prophets – then

they also will be able to cleanse progressively their sciences and technologies, and these will then be a lightning which will brightly enlighten everything that is on the Earth, from sunrise to sunset. With ‘sunrise’ the spiritual should be understood, with ‘sunset’ all what is natural.

[10] If you have understood this, then do not ask again if this or that will already be possible now.”

60. THE WISDOM OF MOSES AND JOSHUA



WHEN the disciples, and of course also the innkeeper, the healed helper, the Pharisee and the scribe heard these words of Mine, **the scribe** said: “From Your words, Lord and Master, I have concluded that You have not only revealed the great mystery of the Kingdom of God on Earth among the people to Your disciples, but also the kingdom of the nature of this Earth, of the moon, the sun and of the stars, and You have given me a new proof that You in Your Spirit must be the Creator of that all, otherwise You could not have explained those endlessly many and wonderful things to Your disciples, and make it even visible to them.

[2] Since You wanted to do this for Your disciples, who are also only Jews and men, would You not like to explain also to us very briefly those wonderful things, in such a manner that we also could have a clear image about what we should think and believe about the moon, the sun and the stars, eclipses, the frightening comets and also the many falling stars? For in this matter we are not even a bit better than the heathens.”

[3] **I** said: “Then why did you reject the 6th and 7th Book of Moses and have declared them as being untrue? And those who dared to read them you have even threatened with severe punishments. Look, in those 2 books Moses has described in clear words the whole natural creation.”

[4] **The scribe** said: “Lord and Master, I have heard about it once, but I have never read even one letter of it. It seems that those

books cannot be found in the temple of Jerusalem anymore. That is why I am asking You now for those things that I have asked, to describe and explain them to us as brief as possible, so that we would then also know what they are and how they are arranged.”

[5] **At the request of the scribe I described those things to the 4 of them as briefly as possible, and in such a manner that they could well understand what I had explained.**

[6] **After the explanation, which lasted for about 1 hour, the scribe asked Me if also the patriarchs knew about this.**

[7] **I said: “Certainly, namely the very first inhabitants of Egypt. But as the people in the course of time withdrew themselves more and more from the one, eternal true God through all kinds of sins, and turned to the blind paganism, becoming more and more dark, then also this knowledge got lost, and was replaced by poetic nonsense and fantasies that are full of errors.**

[8] **And so the knowledge of the Earth and the stars got lost. Only with some, very few wise men in a hidden corner of the Earth it still existed, but these did not dare to make it known to the totally darkened people. And so that knowledge became practically completely lost. But in future times the people will acquire it again, still more clear than in the ancient time, and they will calculate everything. And that will belong to the lightning that enlightens from sunrise to sunset.”**

[9] **The scribe said: “From whom did Moses and Aaron actually receive that knowledge?”**

[10] **I said: “From the Spirit of God. Although Moses, as a son of the Pharaoh, was initiated in the Egyptian mysteries, and did also acquire much of the old astronomy and geography, it was hardly a drop of troubled water compared to the whole sea of his later understanding, which made him the elect leader of the people of Israel, given by the Spirit of God, by which only after that he became a true scientist from God.”**

[11] **The scribe said again: “Lord and Master, Joshua who was also a chosen leader of the people of Israel towards the promised land, must also have known precisely about what Moses has**

described. Then how could he say before Jericho to the sun: ‘Sun, stand still, until I have defeated all the enemies’, and the sun seemed to have obeyed his command? If he said that to the Earth, then this would really make sense according to what You have explained to us just now. But now that we heard from You how things really are, Joshua’s command to the sun seems to be something which is clearly senseless, and it seems that Joshua did still not know the real matter if it was his intention that his command should be executed according to the truth of nature.”

[12] **I** said: “It is true that Joshua said it this way, however not to the natural sun, but to the spiritual sun which consisted in the teaching which Moses received from God. The people’s faith and trust in it began seriously to sink down when they saw the superior power of the enemy. Joshua only wanted to say with his strong crying out to the people who lacked courage and who were utterly grumbling: ‘Continue to have faith and trust until you soon will see the apparent mighty enemy completely defeated before you. Then, together with me, you will be able to occupy the land where milk and honey are flowing, or you will return again to the desert.’

[13] **By** that, the people took courage again with full faith and trust in God, which is, was and will be the true sun of the soul and his spirit in Heaven and on Earth. And look, the sun that was spoken to by Joshua stood still in the faith and trust of the people, enlightened them and gave them courage, intelligence and power, and the enemy was totally destroyed, with exception of the harlot Rahab who showed mercy to the messengers of Joshua. Did you understand this now?”

61. THE SCIENCE OF CORRESPONDENCES



HE scribe said: “Yes, Lord and Master, we all have understood this very well now, so that we realize now that Joshua could have impossibly connected another meaning to his great exclamation. But why did we not understand that just now?”

[2] **I** said: “Because the old inner science of correspondences left you entirely already before the Babylonian captivity, because this science is only accessible for and is typical to those people who never wavered or have become weak in the true faith and trust in the one, true God, and who have always loved Him above all as the Father and their fellowman as themselves.

[3] Because this science is the inner scripture and the inner language of the soul and of the spirit in the soul. He who has lost this language can impossibly understand the Scripture, and in his dead worldly light it seems foolishness to him, because the life’s conditions of the spirit and of the soul are of a totally different nature than those of the body.

[4] So also, the hearing, seeing, feeling, thinking, speaking and the writing *of the spirit*¹ have a totally different character than here among the people in the natural world, and therefore what a spirit does and says, can only be made clear to natural men by way of the ancient science of correspondences.

[5] When this science was lost for men by their own fault, they made the communication with the spirits of all the regions and all the Heavens impossible for themselves, and that is why they cannot grasp nor understand anymore the spiritual sense of the Scripture. They read the written words according to the blindly learned sound of the dead letter and cannot even understand and realize that the letter is dead and can revive no one, but that it is only the inner hidden meaning that revives everything, since it is life itself.

¹ ‘of the spirit’ was added.

[6] If you understand this now, you mostly should strife to make the Kingdom of God alive and completely active in yourselves, then you also will receive again the mentioned science of correspondences between matter and spirit, otherwise you never will be able to understand Moses or another prophet in the deepness of the living truth, and you will be forced in yourself to fall into unbelief, all kinds of doubts and sins. Because when a blind person walks on a road with a lot of stones on it, will he then be able to prevent to stumble while walking, one time against this stone, then again against another, and also falling down many times? And if there is along the way an abyss that shows up, how will he keep himself from falling into it at the next step, finding inevitably death?

[7] So mostly strife for it that you will be reborn in the spirit as soon as possible and become seeing, otherwise you will not escape thousands of dangers that are lying in wait for you and threaten to devour you.”

[8] **On this the scribe said:** “O Lord and Master, Your wisdom is immense, and if we men compare ourselves to You, we are as blind as a stone. Only now I clearly realize what the reason is of the totally shattered faith and trust in God, and I also realize that in the future, precisely the same will happen with this teaching of light and life of Yours as now with the teaching of Moses and the prophets, and that Your love and mercy will make You really to return again to this Earth to the people. Now it is only the question if You will return in the same way as this time or maybe in another way in the manner that is only known to You. Would You not like to explain this further to us?”

[9] **I said:** “I have shown you often very clearly how and in what manner I will return again to this Earth to the people. How can you now ask Me the same thing again?”

[10] **The scribe said:** “It is true, Lord and Master, that You have already told us about this. If only I would already possess the science of correspondences I would also have completely understood the meaning of Your words, but I still do not master

this science at all, and that is why everything You have said about Your return is not clear to me.

[11] Look, my question is actually mainly if You will come back just like now, as a Man of flesh and blood, born out of a pure woman, or unborn, more like a Spirit and still also a visible Man, and where, and to which people.

[12] This is of course a very foolish question of mine according to Your unperceivable wisdom, but I am only a converted person since a couple of hours, and that is why I can be excused when I still bother You with all kinds of foolish questions.”

62. THE RETURN OF THE LORD



SAID: “Your questions are not that foolish, and you have the fullest right to ask what you do not know, and I have of course the right to answer you in the manner that I consider helpful to you and to the others. But because you have already asked it now, I will also give you the answer. So listen.

[2] At My second coming I will not be born somewhere as a child from a woman because this body will remain glorified in eternity – just as I in Spirit – and thus I do not ever need a 2nd body as you had in mind.

[3] First I will come invisibly in the clouds of the Heavens, which means: first I will come close to men by truthful seers, wise men and newly awakened prophets, and in that time also woman will prophecy and young men will have clear dreams by which they will announce My coming to the people, and many will listen to it and improve their life, but the world will call them daydreamers and will not believe them, as this was also the case with the prophets.

[4] So I also will awaken men from time to time to whom I will say by means of their heart to the pen, everything that now during My presence, is, happens and is being discussed. What will then be written once will in a short time of a few weeks and days be multiplied in many thousands of copies in a very artful manner

which will be very well known by the people of that time, and so they can be conveyed to the people. And since the people of that time will almost generally know how to read and write, they also will be able to read and understand those new books themselves.

[5] In this way, the spreading of My teaching will then again be given anew and pure from the Heavens to all men on the whole Earth, much faster and effective than now by messengers in My name from mouth to mouth.

[6] Once My teaching will be brought in this manner among the people who are of good will and have a living faith, and when at least $\frac{1}{3}$ of the people will know about it, I will also personally, visibly and bodily, come to different places, to those who love Me most and have the greatest desire for My return, and who for that reason will also have full and living faith.

[7] And I Myself will form congregations out of them, against which no worldly power will be able to oppose or resist, for I will be their Commander-in-Chief and their eternal invincible Hero, and will administer justice to all dead and blind worldly people. And in this way I will cleanse the Earth of its old filth.

[8] However, during the time of those new seers and prophets there will be great misery and need among the people, as has never been before on this Earth, but for the sake of My chosen ones of that time it will only last for a short time, so that their development towards bliss will not be hindered.

[9] But in this land where I am now persecuted by the Jews of the temple as a criminal from one village to the other, and which is trampled down by dark heathens, I will personally not first act, teach and comfort the weak again. But in the lands of another continent that is now inhabited by heathens I will establish a new Kingdom, a Kingdom of peace, of unity, of love and of continuous living faith. Fear for the death of the body will no more exist among the people who walk in My light and who will always be in contact with the angels of Heaven and associate with them. Here you have now a real answer to your question.”

[10] **The scribe** said: “Thus, Asia, the old cradle of mankind and

of many blessings from God, will not be fortunate anymore to see and hear You when You will return to this Earth? This is truly not a happy news for this continent.”

[11] I said: “The Earth belongs to Me everywhere, and I know in which place My return will be most beneficial for the whole Earth. At that time however, men will be able to contact each other from one end of the Earth to the other, and this as fast as the lightning that strikes from a cloud. And through the use of the spirits that are bound in the fire and the water they will, *riding* on iron roads, cover the greatest distances on Earth, faster than the heaviest storms that drive from one end of the Earth to the other. And the ships will, by means of these same powers, cross the big ocean in a much shorter time than now the Romans from Rome to Egypt. So then it will be possible to spread the message of My personal return in a very short time over the whole Earth, and thus also to Asia.

[12] But then there is again the question: will the blind and deaf heathens of this continent also believe it?

[13] I think and say: this will hardly be possible before it will be purified by a great worldly judgment.

[14] There is a big country, far in the west that is surrounded on all sides by the great world oceans and which is, across the sea, nowhere in connection with the old world. From that country, first the people will come to know great things, and they will also come up in the west of Europe, and from that, there will be a bright shining and a shining in return. The lights of the Heavens will meet each other, recognize and support each other.

[15] Out of these lights, the sun of life will develop – thus the new, perfect Jerusalem – and in that sun I will come back to this Earth. And now we have talked enough about what will happen in the future.

[16] Then even My disciples were very surprised and said among each other: “He never talked so clearly and extensively about His future return. Lucky will be the people of that time who will live there where He will return with all the fullness of His grace, but

unlucky those who will not believe in Him and who will maybe just like the Pharisees now revolt against Him and want to kill Him, who resist Him and want to protect their sanctuary. For as He has shown already several times, and on the Mount of Olives by signs in the sky, He will come to meet them and relentlessly administer justice to them and give them their reward in Hell.”

[17] **I said:** “Yes, yes, with that you have spoken the truth now. And I say to you: truly, truly, this visible sky and this Earth will also perish after the right length of time, but the words that I have spoken to you will not perish.”

63. THE MIDDAY MEAL



URING this conversation it was already midday, and **I said** to the disciples: “You can prepare now to leave, because today we still have a long way to go.”

[2] **But the innkeeper said:** “O Lord and Master, You and Your disciples will surely take with me the midday meal that will soon be completely ready?”

[3] **Also the Pharisee and the scribe were asking Me.**

[4] **And I said to the latter:** “Friend, just look outside, how your companions are busy there in the ruins of the burned down synagogue with the help of many hired workers to gather their treasures they have found, and bring them to a safe place. Will you not help?”

[5] **The scribe said:** “O Lord and Master, I have found here the endlessly much better treasure and will from now on wisely beware of coming too close to the worldly treasures, for if I would do that, then that which I dreamed last night could completely and really come true to me. So let those worldly people search in the remnants of the fire as much as they like, even if they would appropriate my own part. Your presence is now endlessly more preferable to me than all the treasures on Earth. Therefore, be merciful and remain here until the afternoon.”

[6] **I said:** “Out of love for you, because you also love Me, I will

stay here until the afternoon. But keep always your dream in mind and remain loyal to your intention, then you soon will walk into a clearer light. However, what you will still find of your earthly treasures, take it and divide everything among the poor, then in return I will give you another treasure from Heaven. He who will give much in My name, to him I will also give much, but he who will give everything in My name, to him I will also give everything for eternity.”

[7] After these words of Mine **the innkeeper and the Pharisee** said: “Lord and Master, why did You not also say that to us?”

[8] **I** said: “You already know what to do. He who has the good will has also the work already before him. If you are good housekeepers for the poor, then you are already doing the same as if you had given away everything, and My blessing will not stay away from you. Especially remember the poor widows and orphans, then I will remember you and will not leave you behind as orphans on this Earth, but will from now on stay with you in spirit. But go now, innkeeper, and see if the midday meal is ready.”

[9] Then the innkeeper went quickly to the kitchen to find out about the preparation of the midday meal. It was almost prepared, and so the innkeeper hurried to set the table again.

[10] But **I** said: “Just leave it – these platters which are still on the table since the morning meal have not yet become that unclean that we should not be able to eat the midday meal out of them. That which is clean for Me, should also be clean for you.”

[11] The innkeeper took however clean cloths, and he cleansed the platters that were totally empty, because My disciples knew very well how to empty the platters completely. Then the innkeeper and his servants took the cleansed platters, went to the kitchen with them and brought then a large quantity of well prepared fishes, as well as bread and several carafes full of wonder wine, and we began then immediately to partake of the meal.

[12] During the meal, still a lot of things were talked about, which were also discussed at other occasions, and therefore – nota bene –

it is not necessary to relate them again.

[13] When we finished eating, 2 of the Pharisees, who searched the whole morning for their treasures from the remnants of the fire to take them to a safe place, came into the dining hall.

[14] They were very surprised when they saw the Pharisee and even the scribe very cheerfully eating at our table, and they said to the last mentioned (**the Pharisees**): “Oh, you certainly make it easy for yourselves. We work the whole morning outside in order to still find some of the precious treasures that were destroyed by the fire and to bring them to a safe place, and you are doing yourselves well without worrying about us. What kind of behavior is that from you?”

[15] **The scribe, being very angry about this remark, said:** “Listen, firstly we took care already for a long time of that which we could call our own, and we can absolutely not imagine why we should help you to search and take care of your possessions since you also have never considered to help us with something. And secondly, at this opportunity we moreover have discovered and found a quite different treasure, which is now endlessly more dear to us than all your gold and silver that you have grubbed together. But you surely will never be possessors of that treasure. And thirdly we have received here a real wine of life to drink on which your throats are so keen, and which they probably will never taste. And we are now both very well provided in all things and we do not have to give you any account about it. If you have understood me, you can now soon turn around and go back from where you – really totally uninvited – came to us.”

[16] When the 2 Pharisees were at the point of giving him a serious reply because of this answer, **the innkeeper, who, as Samaritan and Roman citizen, made always a short work with the Pharisees, stood up and said:** “According to earthly standards I am still the boss here, and every peaceful guest is dear, valuable and precious to me, whether he is a gentile or a Jew, for a gentile has not made himself a gentile and a Jew has truly not made himself a Jew. But when such quarrelsome people come over the doorstep of

my house, there is not much needed before I make use of my ancient right of the house. If you want to eat or drink something, then go to your usual dining room and order what you want, then what you desire will also be brought to you as soon as possible. But here you have nothing to do, nothing to say and nothing to make, for this is not a Jewish but a Roman inn where all travelers are equally treated and served.”

64. THE DEPARTURE TO KANA



WHEN the 2 heard the innkeeper saying that, they did not object much to it and turned quickly their back to us and went to their dining room, where 2 of the others were waiting for them.

[2] There they related how they were treated by the scribe and especially by the innkeeper.

[3] **Their companions** said: “We know the innkeeper already for a long time as a very proud and self-willed person, and so we do not care about his inborn rudeness. We are only happy that we have found our good valuable things for the greatest part and brought them to a good safe place, and so we can take it.

[4] But still, it is strange that the treasures of one of us, and also of the scribe, who conformed themselves most to that Nazarene, were kept undamaged, and of the Pharisee Joram even his habitation. Also the habitation of the scribe has been damaged only insofar as the ceiling seems to have burned through at some places. But the door of his living room seems to have suffered little from the fire. Thus, also his treasures must have suffered little damage.”

[5] **Another** said: “No matter what, in a few months time our synagogue will be completely all right again, and we have still more than enough to live from. So let not such matters of minor importance trouble our present enjoyment.”

[6] Then they ordered fishes and lamb, unleavened bread and wine, which a true Jew was allowed to drink. This they received immediately and they enjoyed it peacefully.

[7] We also finished our meal now, and the innkeeper asked Me if he did perhaps say too much to the 2 Pharisees.

[8] I said: “Do not worry about that, for they have a strong stomach and they can bear much, as long as their personal interests does not seem to suffer loss. If these 2 here, whom I already consider as My followers, are smart, then they can succeed to bring also the others on their side.

[9] But now it is really time to move on with My disciples, for I see where I soon have to come. You should not be sad because of that, for I will only leave you as far as My visible body is concerned. However, with My Spirit that is active everywhere I will stay with you, as well as with everyone who believes in Me, loves Me and who lives and acts according to the teaching that he has received. If you still discover some doubt in your heart, turn to Me, then I will lay the answer on your tongue. So stay in Me, then I also will stay in you.”

[10] Then they all promised Me solemnly that they faithfully would practice My teaching until the end of their earthly life, would keep Me in their heart and defend *Me* against every hostile approach and malicious persecution.

[11] Then I quickly stood up with My disciples and traveled along the secret road to Kana. To prevent a sensation I did not want to travel through the market place, because the woman was still waiting for Me to recognize Me as the One who made her daughter seeing that morning.

[12] The woman inquired the whole morning at several houses, but could not receive any information about Me. Therefore, she was on watch with the girl on the square, but of course without any result. However, the innkeeper found the woman with the girl, took them both in his house and took excellently care of them. The girl was a conclusive proof to him in the village of what I had accomplished in the village, because concerning the 10 cleansed lepers, already for a long time – as they say – no trace could be found. And the healed chief helper of the innkeeper could, as a sufferer of gout, also not count as specific proof before the worldly people of My

power to perform miracles, because there were cases where such sufferers of gout were finally also healed by means of good medicines, which were less lacking than – nota bene – during this time.

[13] But a born-blind girl who was as such very well known in the whole region, was much more significant. And so, the innkeeper, Joram and the scribe preferred this girl, together with her mother, as proof of My divine power instead of all other signs about which they surely could tell, but for which they could not give any concrete proof.


[14] To this girl, who also had a nice appearance, happened also another exceptional earthly good fortune 10 years later, because the woman of the known Kado in Jericho died. He came in this region, came to know her and took her out of love for Me as his second wife. And so also, My mercy – when someone receives it – has always good results in earthly respect.

[15] Joram, the first converted Pharisee, and the scribe, whose name was Boz, brought in a short time the other Pharisees on their good side, to which the healed girl and later friend Kado had of course very much contributed.

[16] With this, we will consider this little story about this market place as completely ended, and we will now again return to ourselves and see what happened on our further trip to Kana.

THE LORD IN KANA

65. IN THE INN AT KANA

 FROM the now well-known marketplace it was still a very long way. A good walker would hardly be able to cover it in one full day, but by traveling in our miraculous manner, as we did oftentimes, we only needed 3 hours for it. So towards the evening we came in Kana and stayed with the same innkeeper with whom for the first time, and on request of Maria who gave birth to Me, I openly changed water into wine during a wedding.

[2] When the innkeeper caught sight of Me, he was almost beside himself from joy, and he really reproached Me because already for a long time I did not show up to him.

[3] But I said to him: “Since there was no need with you, and amongst you all who live here, I did not come into this region, but now a little need has set in with you, and so I came at the right time to help you all.”

[4] **The innkeeper said:** “O dear Lord and Master, this need lasts with me already for more than 1 year, and already several times I have on the one hand turned to You in my heart, and on the other hand I urgently took information concerning You with Your brothers and with Your mother who stays mostly in Kis nowadays, but You seemed not to hear the pious wishes of my heart, and also I could not come to know where You were perhaps staying, and so until now I had to quietly suffer the great need of my house in the name of the almighty God. Although I do not know the reason why I was visited by God the Lord so hard, but now I ask You, dear, good Savior, if You would like to help me.

[5] My wife is afflicted with gout, and the children are suffering from malicious fevers, 2 of my best and most loyal helpers are bedridden for already more than ½ year with a malicious leper disease, and I must mostly let the work of my business be done by strangers in return of high wages. And this is surely a ‘need’, especially because I myself cannot be counted anymore among the

healthy ones.

[6] O dear Lord and Master, since You, at the request of Your mother, have done a first sign during a wedding that was celebrated here, it has become quite different in my house. If You do not want to help me I will soon go to ruin, in spiritual as well as in earthly respect.”

[7] **I** said: “I surely knew that your need became great, and since I heard your frequent begging for help, and your need reached a very high degree, I have come now to give you the right kind of help. I also could have come to you earlier, but then you were still greatly lacking living faith and trust, but only after you went to Kisjonah in Kis you received the right light about Me, and you came to the right faith and trust in Me, and therefore I have come to give you all help. And so I want now that everyone who is sick in your house, including yourself, will be as healthy as if no one had ever been sick of anything. Go now to all your sick ones and tell them.”

[8] Then the innkeeper hurried to all the sick people and saw that they were completely healthy, so that they stood up from their beds, put on clean clothes, came to Me and thanked Me.

[9] Since it was almost evening and really getting dark, **I** said to the innkeeper who was crying from happiness: “Since the need in your house has now been resolved and I will stay in your house tonight, then do take care now that I and My disciples will receive an evening meal. Let fishes be prepared for us, and after that put some bread and wine on the table.”

[10] When the innkeeper heard My wish, everyone went full of joy to work, to satisfy My wish. It hardly took 1 full hour to prepare the evening meal. It was put on the table and **I** said to the innkeeper: “Look, there is another table. Let now all who are healed sit at that table, and eat what we eat, everyone as he needs, and they should also drink wine and eat bread, so that they will again become really strong.”

[11] When I had said that, **all those who were healed** felt on their knees before Me and said: “O Lord, we are not worthy of such

grace. That is why we prefer to eat a simple evening meal in our kitchen at our old table for the servants. But not ours, but Your only holy will be done.”


[12] **I** said: “Listen, your justified humility and modesty pleases Me, and makes your soul meek, but nevertheless stay here, for you have greatly suffered with patience and in full dedication to God’s will, and thus you proved to be real heroes in faith and trust in God, and that is why you are also worthy to strengthen yourselves completely near to Him, as blessed ones of the Lord. So go now cheerfully and sit at that table, and eat and drink what will be set on the table for you.”

[13] When those who were healed heard Me saying that, except of the women who was busy in the kitchen, they stood up with deep respect, thanked Me and went quietly to their table that was already covered, just like ours, with food, wine and bread. Then we started immediately to eat, and to drink the very pure and good wine, and those who were healed did so as well.

[14] We ate and drank now cheerfully, and My disciples related to the really pious company the best of what we all had experienced on our criss-cross trips. This was extremely pleasing to our small company, and on both sides many warm-hearted things were told while also many tears were shed.

[15] But it was in a certain way remarkable that our Judas Iscariot, whom we already know very well, suddenly made complete contrary remarks.

66. THE INNKEEPER AND JUDAS ISCARIOT

 **HE innkeeper** said (nota bene: I will tell this to you, new Salemites, somewhat more extensively): “Friend, you are a disciple of the Lord and your profession is nothing else than a potter, this as far as I very well know you from your pottery products that were always of the most bad quality. But how you were able to come into the companionship of this Lord and Master – thus practically in the most perfect company of God the Lord –

not even the archangel Michael could answer us.”

[2] **Judas Iscariot said:** “Yes friend, you are right that you directed such words to me. I am a potter indeed, but truly not inexperienced in the Scripture. I have Moses and the prophets in my little finger, thanks to a scribe, and I know very well in whose company I am. I really do not travel along *with Him* to earn something worldly – which should be allowed to everyone anyway, considering the worldly conditions – but only to see if the prophet Isaiah did not speak or write any untruth in his predictions. For although my profession is a potter, I am also learned in the Scripture, and from my always quiet observations I have seen everything truly accomplished to this true God-Man that the named prophet and also the other prophets have predicted of Him.

[3] And I also have a good memory, and I know every word that the Lord has predicted on several occasions to my disadvantage. In short: I am a devil in the company of the disciples of the Lord, whom I, despite everything, also acknowledge as such, because the signs that He does, no natural human being has ever done. But if I acknowledge this just like all the others, and believe it firmly, I ask: then why am I a devil?

[4] Good, if I am one, then I am one, and I must to be one. But if you must be something that you actually never wanted to be, then can I be blamed for everything? In short: suddenly this matter becomes too much for me. I am now just like all the others almost 2 ½ years one of the first disciples of the Lord, and I must become a devil of Hell. No, this will absolutely not happen because I surely know now what in the whole world I have to do in order not to become a devil.

[5] Yes, during the time when the Lord gave me such statement I also was like that in His eyes, for He alone examines the heart and the kidneys of man. So He also knew my condition, and He also will know my condition now. If I do not fit in His company, then He has more than enough power to remove me on the spot. He alone is the Lord and can do whatever He wants, and no one can

say to Him: ‘Lord, why are You doing this?’ But by someone who is completely equal to me I really do not like to be rebuked. Because every person has his weaknesses and has enough work with himself to come into the right order, and as long as he still has to fight against his own weaknesses, he should leave his fellowman in peace and should not rejoice over his faults – not belittle him in front of everyone.

[6] I know Moses and the prophets and I also know now the teaching of the Lord in which everything is confirmed what all the prophets since Adam, Sehel and Enoch have predicted about the One who is sitting among us now. And so I know also what I should do and leave out. I only would like to know why I, among us, disciples of the Lord, am always looked at with unfriendly eyes as being the least, as if I would be a devil among them in the fullest meaning of the word.”

[7] **Now the innkeeper said:** “Friend, you got angry now, only because I asked you in my joy how it came to pass that you also became a permanent disciple of the Lord. In no way I wanted to rebuke you by that, and did also not know anything about the fact that the Lord has called you once with a name that I myself do not wish to pronounce anymore. I only expressed my surprise about you because I knew all too well your way of living as a citizen before, and I have seen that, despite your knowledge of the Scripture, you never kept God’s commandments too seriously or too strictly.

[8] When people talked to you, you always knew everything much better than no matter who, but when they asked you if you believed it yourself as an unquestionable truth – because your way of acting was often not very praiseworthy – then you said: ‘no one has ever seen God or heard the voice of His mouth, but at all times there were men with different talents and capabilities, and Moses and all the prophets were only men with whom we ourselves never talked. What they have learned and written down was good for their time, but since then the times have changed tremendously, and so we and our necessities have also completely changed, and therefore

Moses and the prophets are no more useful to us in many respects. And whoever does not realize that from his own experiences, is deceiving himself, because he offences against his earthly happiness of life for the sake of attaining Heaven, which is our destiny, but about which we do not have the least of certainty.’ You see, friend, that I also still have a good memory.

[9] So I know you very well, and your principles of life were not unknown to me, and that is now exactly why I was surprised about the fact that you are staying with this most highly honored company, because for what concerns your belief you were entirely a Sadducee and you also adhered to the dog’s wisdom of the Greeks about which you often said that these were the closest to the nature of man if already as a child we were educated in that.

[10] Now you yourself, tell me why I should not be surprised that also you became a permanent disciple of the Lord, and that you gave up your former business with which you made a lot of money, although your pottery products were never the best. Why *you have done that*, you as the expert will know best. But here it clearly shows that I never had the intention to belittle you and still less to rebuke you.

[11] But why you always consider yourself as the least among the disciples of the Lord, that is your business. However, compared with the other disciples, I do not notice that you were given a lower rank.

[12] However, I am of the opinion that such thought can only come up in someone’s mind who – out of a certain opinion of pride about himself in what he practices – always prefers to be the first and the most famous one than to be the least and subordinate in what he performs. But someone who is already extremely happy to be the least of the least in such company, and who can be the servant of the servants of the Lord will never complain about that, and will not be secretly hurt because of the fact that he considers himself as the least among that company.

[13] As far as I know now the meaning of the teaching of the Lord – about which I talked a lot with Kisjonah and with Philopold of

the neighboring village Kane that is located in the land that is sticking out and which goes from Samaria deeply into our land, but also only a couple of weeks ago with 2 disciples whom I met in Capernaum and who were send out from Jerusalem – the meaning of that teaching is the greatest humility, meekness and self-denial, without which such qualities of the mind no true and pure love for God and fellowman are imaginable.

[14] But someone who can still be hurt or offended by the weaknesses of his fellowmen has still not penetrated to the true point of life, where the Lord wants *to say* or could say about him: ‘Look, this is a man after My heart.’

[15] I have told you now honestly my opinion, and this because you forced me to it. Now you can again make your remarks, if you can make some against it.”

[16] **Judas Iscariot felt very hurt because of those very clever words of the innkeeper and did at first not know what he should answer him.**

[17] **Only after a while he said (Judas Iscariot):** “Yes, yes, you will be right, for you have really penetrated deeply in the spirit of the teaching. But if the Lord would now say to you: ‘You are a devil’, how would such testimony from His mouth taste to you?”

[18] **The innkeeper said:** “Friend, if the Lord would give such testimony to me, I would say to Him in my heart: ‘O Lord and Master of life, I thank You, completely crushed by Your glory, that You have shown me what kind of great sinner I still am in Your eyes. But I ask You: be merciful and forgiving to me, and drive the devil of pride, lie and deception and miserable selfishness out of me, and fill me with the spirit of true humility, meekness, self-denial, true love for You and unselfish love for my fellowman.’ And I belief that the Lord will certainly not refuse to give me such mercy if out of my fullest life’s earnest I would ask Him for it.

[19] And now I turn to You, o Lord and Master, and I ask You to rebuke me mercifully if I have said something wrong in the course of my words.”

67. THE LORD ABOUT JUDAS ISCARIOT



ERY friendly I said to the innkeeper: “How could you have said something wrong and therefore unjust since I have put the words in your mouth and in your heart? You have said to this disciple, completely in My Spirit and in My name, frankly and straightly the full truth in his face. It will be good for him if he will take them to heart for his life.

[2] Oh, I know very well that he is learned in the Scripture, and I also know about all his knowledge and experience from other places in which he exceeds by far all My other disciples. But to what advantage is that to him, if he travels around with Me for almost 2 ½ years, mostly to watch Me closely in everything I do, to see if he can find something which is not according to the Scripture? Because of that, his hidden pride, which he therefore did still not give up, and so also his selfishness and possible pursuit of profit is always nourished anew. That is why he stays as he is, and he does not allow anyone to rebuke him completely and truthfully to improve his life, because he always thinks within himself: ‘What do you, poor and ignorant fishers want to teach me, while I am learned in the Scripture?’

[3] But I say: in itself it is very good to be learned in the Scripture, but to Me, someone who knows only little of the Scripture but who lives and acts in faith according to it, is much more dear to Me than someone who is very learned in the Scripture, who only criticizes the Scripture, who hardly and finally does not believe in it at all, and therefore does not live and act according to the Scripture, but only according to the advice of his worldly reason.

[4] Once a person has blown up himself by the vanity of his great knowledge, is as blind in the spirit as all those extremely wise Jews and Pharisees and scribes in Jerusalem. Even so much so that in bright daylight he cannot see the forest between the trees, thus who is still searching it, and while he is standing in the middle of it he asks: ‘Yes, but where is that forest that I sought and wanted to see?’

[5] And from a spiritual point of view, is it also not the same as with someone who asks in the middle of his life if he is really living, and out of what his life actually consists?

[6] Fool, your skin and your flesh and the outer world that is equal to you will of course not be able to tell you, because all that is in itself no life, but only a result of life. Go into your inner being by faith, by love, by humility, meekness and true self-denial, and become through that an independent life with the life from God in you, then you will experience that you are truly alive and what life is.

[7] Indeed, why do people not search for gold in dead rocks? But on a spot where they have discovered traces of that metal, they penetrate into the deep of the mountains and gather great treasures therein. If people do this without fear and restraint to win earthly treasures which are dead as such, and which also bring death to a lot of people, then why are they not doing this in and with themselves to win the gold of life that is hidden in them? They already have the clearest traces of the inner and true gold of life on their skin.

[8] Once a person exists and lives, but who as an unripe fruit of life is still not aware why he exists and lives, should, in his works, stand in the light from God. By that he should strongly enlighten himself and warm himself in his heart, then by that he will come to an inner liberation and true ripeness of life. Therein he will clearly be aware how and why he exists and lives, and what and who the life in him is.”

**68. TAKING THE RIGHT WAY TO THE RIGHT GOAL.
THE WRONG AND CORRECT WAY
OF THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE REASON.**



S man goes on for life, being still blind and unripe in the world, he resembles a stalk of corn that starts its development from the germ. When, through the influence of the sun, it has grown out only 1 span above the earth's surface, nothing can be seen yet of a fruit-bearing ear, but through the increased influence of the sun, soon the ear becomes visible, which becomes also fuller and more perfect, it blooms and sets the grains of corn, which ripe to the stalk and in the little husks to become the strong and life-bearing grains of wheat which, when they are completely ripe, loosen themselves completely from the stalk and also completely from the little husks, and as such they are free in it.

[2] Once the grain has become completely ripe, the stalk and the ear die. Why actually? Because all its former outer life has passed into the true inner life of the fruit in the grain. And therein are now also the roots and the stalk that grow up, in every stage of its growth towards perfection up to the complete ripeness. And this not only one time but multiple times, for otherwise a grain that was put into the soil would not be able again to bring forth in ever greater quantities everything that is necessary for the growth and the ripeness of the grain.

[3] Did you ever experience, that in the stiffened cold winter, in the weak light of the sun, the moon and all the stars, a stalk of corn with its ear and grains have grown up from the soil to complete ripeness? This is impossible in the winter, just like it is impossible when a person under the numberless different little lights of the so highly praised worldly wisdom can ever come to the true inner ripeness of life and liberation. The summer of life must come over him, together with the preceding spring. The latter consists of the faith that becomes more and more alive through *good* deeds, just like the summer, which brings all the fruits to complete

ripeness, consists of the ever more powerful love for God and from that for fellowman.

[4] God, who is in Himself Love, Light and Life, is the true Sun of all life. He who loves God ever more deeply by acting according to His revealed will in everything, penetrates in his inner being, and in this way he will pass into the true summer of the Spirit from God, where he, in the life's light of love and its life's warmth, will come to the true ripeness of life.

[5] Since you hear this now from My mouth, observe it well and act accordingly, then you will come to that true ripeness of life. Did you understand this now, and also you, Judas Iscariot?"

[6] This one said (**Judas Iscariot**): "Lord and Master, You have spoken now in clear images. We also have understood them, and everyone knows now, still more convinced than at first, what he should do to attain to the Kingdom of God in himself. Nevertheless, it is still no easy task to move to living power what is still immovably resting and slumbering in man, just like the germ in a grain of seed. That should first be put into good soil and die off completely, so that the spirit in the germ, that brings about everything, can awaken and can develop its own activities according to the intelligence that lives in him. Because from a grain of seed that lies dry in a barn somewhere, will never grow a stalk, an ear and ripe grains, despite the most beautiful spring and most beautiful summer."

[7] I said: "Good, if you know this according to the full truth, then put off your old, material, human Adam and put on the new one out of Me, then the inner man in you will become of itself just as active as the spirit in the germ when the grain, which surrounds it, has perished in the soil, and thus has passed into the spirit of the germ as nourishment and strengthening."

[8] On this, **Judas Iscariot** said again: "Lord and Master, but how can the old Adam be put off and then put on a new one? Should the material body first be killed in order to attain to a spiritual life?"

[9] I said: "How can one of My old and most learned disciples

come to such a most foolish opinion? Who said that a person should kill his body to become then a pure spiritual man? It are your worldly passions and lusts, that rage and storm in you, which you should subdue with your free will, and strife for the Kingdom of God in yourself in the manner which is most clear to you all, then by that you have put off the old man and put on a new one.

[10] But if you constantly and very secretly adhere in yourself to the outer things and their enticements, and wander around in the limited region of your earthly wisdom and all kinds of experiences that you have gained as a blind person, then it still can happen to you that the evil spirit of the world will capture you completely, and as a pitiful victim, your body and soul will become his prey.

[11] He who wants to come to the inner, true wisdom of the Spirit from God through experiences and according to the opinions of his worldly reason is terribly mistaken. He will come on byways that are full of abysses, in which, in the night of his spirit, he very quickly and easily can fall and bring himself to ruin completely.

[12] Are there not numberless stars in the sky at night? And still, in their light you cannot read one letter. So also, man cannot decipher the inner scripture of life with the thousandfold shine of his difficultly acquired worldly knowledge and experiences that he has gained.

[13] But as during the day, in the light of the sun, even the smallest letter can be well read, so can man also – when the inner sun of life has gone up in him by his actions according to My Word – read and understand his inner, true scripture of life, and can see the relations between everything that is in him and which also surrounds him on all sides towards the outside.

[14] To seek only with the weak twilight of the worldly reason, the soul in man cannot even find himself, let alone his connection of life with the body and with the spirit in him. It is true that man should develop his reason of the brains and learn how to think reasonably, but not in the manner of the world, but like the true children of God, as this can be clearly noticed with the pious patriarch and forefathers. Then the reason of the brains will also

soon and easily acquire the intensity of light, compared to which all worldly wisdom is a great darkness.

[15] Just look for instance to the first development of the reason of men like Samuel and David, of Salomon and still another great number of people. Where is there among those who are learned in worldly respect – among the Jews as well as among the heathens – someone who can match those men in wisdom? So follow what I Myself say to you, then also your brain's understanding will also be very well enlightened in all things.”

69. THE CAUSE OF THE NEED ON EARTH



Now the innkeeper said: “Lord and Master, I thank You for this lesson, not only for myself, but also in the name of all those of my house who were healed by You, because through that we were able to know ourselves and thus also the Kingdom of God in ourselves. What we have to do, we know now better than ever before, and because we know this now, we will also act according to it, and the world will not bring us on a wrong track anymore. Strengthen our will with Your mercy and love, so that these will always keep up with our understanding of the truth from You until the enlightened goal of our life, because the knowledge of even the most enlightened truth is not enough when it goes together with a weak and lazy will. The will is however the power of love in us. As is its condition, so is also our will. Therefore, o Lord, strengthen in us most of all the love for You and our fellowman.”

[2] I said: “Your prayer is truthful and correct, and will also be answered completely. However, when a person prays for insignificant and foolish things of this world, he mostly will not be completely heard by Me. So be totally at ease now. In your actions you will also find the complete answer to your prayer, as well as all those whom you have included in your prayer. For it is always pleasing to Me when someone, out of pure love, comes to Me with the right prayer. It will never stay unanswered. But the requests

and the prayers of people who let themselves be highly honored and praised as the servants of God, and who let themselves truly mercilessly and dearly be paid for their meaningless requests and prayers, will never be answered by Me in the least, because what a person does not do out of pure love for his fellowman, but only to glitter in the eyes of the world, has no meaning for Me.

[3] If you perform a good deed to your fellowman with your right hand, then let it not be noticed by your left hand. God, who surely sees everything, no matter how much it is hidden, will surely pay you back.

[4] When someone gives a loan with his surplus money, he should not lend to those who can pay him a high interest for that, but to those who are really in need, without interest. And if they also cannot pay back his capital, then he should not bear a grudge about this and not take the possessions of the poor who often became poor without their fault, but remit them in all kindness and neighborly love what they owe to him. Truly, then I will pay back the capital of such merciful believer, with high interest and establish for him a great treasure in the Kingdom of Heaven, from which he will eternally be able to live from in great abundance.

[5] Truly, even a drink of fresh water that your love has given to a thirsty person, will be rewarded by Me.

[6] If all the people would live together in this manner, and would live and act according to God's will and advice, which was oftentimes revealed to them, there would never be any need, distress or sadness among them on this Earth. The people are causing all misery only themselves by their evil spirit of usury. In the first place it are the little ones and the poor who suffer, but after that it comes a thousand times worse over the great and powerful ones, because by their tendency to usury, and their imperiousness that cries to Heaven, they are thieves and robbers of the people and so, at the right time they can expect their deserved reward from Me.

[7] Just look to all the great kingdoms on your well-known Earth. Where are those former so mighty kings of Babylon, of Nineveh

and of Greece, and the mighty Egyptians and their pharaoh's? They have all withered, and so it will also happen to those great kingdoms in the future because of their usury and their too great lust for power. Because men's extremely selfish usury and the too great lust for power and the craving for glitter represent the actual Satan, a prince of this world, who, because he does not possess any light of life from the Heavens, is completely Hell himself, and to whom it is indeed allowed to raise himself up to a certain height for the trial of the free will and his love, but when that height has exceeded, then comes the judgment, and then Satan and Hell will be thrown into the abyss of ruin. Thus, stay all in My teaching, and fight with pure love, good will and all meekness and humility against Hell and against the Satan, then in return you will receive the crown of victory of the eternal life and you will establish already on this Earth a true Kingdom of God.

[8] So I did also not come into this world to bring *the Earth* – as it is *now* – peace and quietness, but the sword to fight against it, and I Myself am, as the eternal Truth, the sword. That sword I have also given to you for the battle against Hell and its raging power. Thus, do not fear those who can indeed kill your body, but who cannot damage the soul. And if ever you want to fear someone, then fear the One who possesses all power in Heaven and on the whole material world, and who, as the only Lord and Master over life, can throw a soul who is filled with sins, into the deepest abyss of Hell and its eternal death. Did you understand that?"

[9] **They all said:** "Yes, Lord and Master, but it is sad that we men in this world, which is most certainly already a perfect Hell, must fight for Heaven. Although Heaven has been established in this world already a lot of times among the people, but this always lasted only for a short time. But all too soon the ancient Hell was in force among the people and made them devils. Only a very few, in a hidden corner of the Earth, succeeded in quietness to preserve Heaven and to keep it. Can it really not be different on this Earth? Will this Earth always remain a harvest field of death and an eternal grave of everything that breathes and lives?"

70. THE TASK OF THE HUMAN SOUL ON EARTH



SAID: “Could anyone live on a globe that does not exist out of all kinds of matter and its elements? But what is all matter, and what are its elements? That is the spiritual, which is judged and kept bound by God’s almightiness, but which has the ability in itself to live more and more free and thus also more and more independent.

[2] That order of multiple transitions – which you can see in all points of the Earth and which I have already shown you from the smallest to the greatest in great details – is absolutely necessary in order to bring all those numberless initial spirits, which are as it were separated from God by the matter of the worlds, to a completely free life that is as independent as the original primordial life from God.

[3] Up to man, God’s love, wisdom and power are entirely taking care that the development of the primordial spiritual life, which is kept bound in a hardened form of worldly matter, will change into an ever-greater completion and continue to develop itself. But with man, who is the keystone of the development of the primordial spiritual life, it has to take place in a different way by necessity. As far as his material body is concerned, its arrangement is also dependant for the greatest part on God’s love, wisdom and power, but not so with the development of the soul and his spirit. To that soul, understanding has been given, reason, a free reasoning power, a completely free will and the power to act as he thinks it is good and useful.

[4] But so that the soul can know how he should act in order to attain – after the laying off of his body – to the ultimate and divine life, which is without matter and free of every judgment and thus completely freely independent, and can exist before God’s face, God shows him the ways on which he should walk to attain as blissful as possible to the ultimate goal of life.

[5] Then it really depends on the free reason and the will of the soul to free himself from all attachments of the old matter that is

under judgment, and not to let himself as it were again be captured and devoured by the material worldly lusts.

[6] God's invincible eternal power is present in matter. It only can be freed in some places by the power of God Himself, according to what is necessary for a higher goal. That is why no other creature can be different or act differently than it has been formed and set by God's power. That is why already the old wise men, who clearly understood the circumstances of God's power in the being of every material creature, said: 'For man, who must become free, it is terrible to fall again into the hands of God's power.'

[7] Now you think within yourselves: 'Yes, but how can man, who is weak, ever avoid the hands of God's power that rules everywhere?' A person, whose soul is still entangled in all kinds of material lusts, can certainly not do that, at no time. But that is why God has given man the great capability to acquire God's power himself. Once he has acquired that, then he is also as perfect in everything as the Father in Heaven. Thus, he has become the power of God himself, and this cannot and will not ever conquer, judge or imprison itself.

[8] But of what consists that power of God in man? It consists of the true and pure love for God, of its all-superior wisdom, and by that of the right love for fellowman, and also of meekness and humility, as well as self-denial against the enticements coming from the world. He who has become strong in all this, has already the power of God in himself, and has become, through the unification of the Spirit of Power from God with the soul, completely one with God, and has by that raised himself above the coercion of time and space, and with that also above every judgment and every death. He has become an independent ruler in and from God, and eternally he should no more fear, as little as God should fear Himself, the 'wrath of God', which is His almighty and all-powerful will of which the unbendable earnest gives every creature its firmness in time and space, because man has become one with God in the manner that I have clearly explained to you now.

[9] As I am now in the Father and the Father is in Me, so all who will live according to My teaching, which is My will, will be in Me and I will be in him.”

71. THE WAY MANKIND HAS TO GO TO REACH THE GOAL



WHEN they all thanked Me again for this lesson.

[2] **The innkeeper** said: “O Lord and Master, Your words have made a deep and thus lasting impression on me, which clearly radiates through my inner being. O, what immense depth of Your love and wisdom lies in this. About the wonderful relations between God and the created beings, it is only the Spirit of God that can give such most clear and precious explanation to men, who are also His created beings. And from this we can see why God has revealed His will to men and why they have to make it as it were their possession through their actions.

[3] O world, o world, where are you with your so highly praised wisdom. O Lord and Master, would it not be possible for You to lay such light in the mind of men? If all would realize this in themselves, a lot of them would finally stop sinning.”

[4] **I** said: “You surely mean it well with people, but still it would be a completely useless effort. I only have to force the will of men, but if I would do that, man would be already judged and would never be able to raise himself to an independent freedom of life, for his will must be free, because otherwise man would be no man *anymore*.

[5] And to only enlighten the mind of men, the good cause would even be less served than when they would be taught from the outside by a fellowman who became wise and strong with the help of My teaching. But when already now so many people are not believing in Me while I in their presence am not only teaching them but also performing signs which were never done by anyone else before Me, they would trust even less their own mind, with which they cannot perform any signs alone, because their heart and

will would not come so easily and fast as you think in complete harmony with what they realize as true and good. For even when man with his reason realizes very clearly all the things that are good and true, while his heart is still full of all kinds of worldly things, then it still will cost him a lot of hard struggle with his own world before this will be removed from the heart and its will, so that man would only love and will what he has discerned as true and good.

[6] Only when the love, the will and the mind, which is filled with all truth, have become one in all actions, has man also entered in the rebirth of the Spirit from God in his soul and has stepped into the first degree of God's power in himself, and in that condition he can already perform signs.

[7] But someone who is often too much filled with the world cannot come so fast and easy to that condition. And the reason for that I have already shown you. But without the attainment of that condition, all pure intellectual knowledge is for man only like any other knowledge. For the perfecting of the inner man it has only very little value and is often rather more harmful than useful. Generally, it is better for man if he, tormented by all kinds of objections and doubts, must search for the truth of life, compared to when he would already possess it in his intellect as a sun that suddenly came up while by far he does not yet possess the power in his love and in his will to act accordingly. That is why, with man, his heart and intellect must be developed and be made stronger at the same time progressively, otherwise no man can really make any progress in understanding and act accordingly.

[8] What would be the use for man his 2 manly strong arms, which are capable for every work, if his feet would be paralyzed with gout? And what would be the use to tie 2 oxen to 1 cart in such a way that one would pull forward and the other pull backward? To 2 strong man's arms belong also 2 healthy and strong feet, and for a cart the draft animals must be tied in front, otherwise there can and will be no progress in the work and the movement of the cart. Therefore, the manner in which I Myself am bringing the people

now the active light of life is surely the best, and after Me you should not do it otherwise.

[9] Have you, My friend, understood this lesson now as clearly as My former lesson with which light you immediately wanted to enlighten the mind of all men?"

[10] **The innkeeper** said: "O yes, Lord and Master, here proves again the eternal true basic principle according to which a good and wise father knows better the life's necessities than his children, who are still totally inexperienced in a lot of things. Accept my thanks also for this very important lesson."

72. THE TRAVELERS BEFORE THE INN



SAID: "Friend, the 3rd hour of the night has now passed, and soul and body were satiated here, but outside on the road 2 poor travelers are camping, because they have no money to seek accommodation in this inn. Let them be brought inside and give them bread and wine, and then a place to sleep, after I will have exchanged a few words with them for your sake."

[2] When the innkeeper heard Me saying that, he went immediately outside with the chief helper. But, together with the 2 men, he also saw a woman and a child, and he sent a helper to Me to ask Me if he also should take in the woman and the child.

[3] **I** said: "A man and a woman are one body, but the second man is the brother of the woman. Therefore, the innkeeper should take them all in."

[4] Then the helper went away and informed the innkeeper, and he brought them all into the room and gave them bread and wine.

[5] When the 4 people had strengthened themselves, **I** said to the man who was with the woman and the child, a 12 year old girl: "Listen, as far as your ancestry is concerned, you are a Jew, but during the time of the Babylonian captivity – of course in your forefathers – you escaped, together with 200 men, women and children completely to the far India.

[6] Your forefathers traveled for more than 50 days, and they

finally found in the widely extended mountain ranges a lonely valley that was rich with tender pastures, all kinds of fruit trees which were unknown to them, and herds of goats and gazelles. Springs and brooks, and also noble fishes did not lack in the mentioned valley.

[7] Your forefathers, who fed themselves with fruits and roots during the long journey, examined the valley, which in all directions was as long as many hours of traveling, and they found everything that was needed for a living. And they found no people or one or the other kind of dwelling huts of which they could have concluded that men already had inhabited it.

[8] After they had examined the valley, your forefather, who was one of the oldest of the 200 who escaped, said: ‘All glory and honor to God the Lord. He also has built this valley and has planted the fields with all kinds of grass and herbs and roots and trees that carry many fruits, and we ate already some of them and they did not harm us. And this beautiful valley is also rich with all kinds of gentle animals that are not afraid of us because they probably were never chased by animals of prey and still less by hunters who are eager for a catch. We certainly are the first men who came into this valley.

[9] We will build habitations for ourselves here and will be able to live together very peacefully. Together we will take care of the necessary livelihood, and always thank God the Lord for the kindness, and give honor only to Him, for He has led us in such a wonderful way to this beautiful valley.

[10] When formerly He led our fathers out of Egypt through the desert to Canaan, many who left Egypt did not come into the Promised Land, and those who came into it, had first to endure many struggles and afflictions. But with His help we fortunately escaped the godless tyranny of Nebuchadnezzar and we all reached safely this faraway valley that is surrounded on all sides by such high mountains that they cannot be climbed over. We ourselves came here only through a very narrow and hardly passable cleft that we can easily block in such a way that also there no one can

pass through to come to us. Then we will no more have to fear the proud and loveless kings of the Earth.

[11] But we ourselves always want to and will strictly observe among ourselves God's commandments that are well known to us, without ever being neglectful, and thankfully remember every day of our life that God let us found this valley. We will also count the days, and appoint the 7th day as the Sabbath, and give all honor to God on that day. In this valley we surely will never see the Ark of the Covenant, of which we do not know where it is, but instead of that we want to build a new ark¹ in our heart for God by keeping His holy commandments. And, by our love for Him, we will bring Him an offering that will be more pleasing to Him than the brunt offerings of the priests who have stoned the prophets and who fattened themselves with the tithes and rich offerings.'

[12] When your forefather had finished this good speech to the others, they all fell on their face to the ground and praised God for almost a full hour, and prayed to Him for His further help, love and mercy.

[13] And God was truly well pleased with those fugitives, and He gave your forefather wisdom, and then he found many things in that valley that were necessary to provide themselves better for their livelihood. They already had taken a few necessary equipments and tools on the back of their pack animals that they took along and with which in the beginning they could build the necessary huts and storerooms. God's Spirit showed them all the rest, and with a little effort of themselves He also provided them *with all this*.

[14] In the short time of a few years they were already provided with all kinds of things. They possessed big flocks of the most noble mountain goats with fine wool, and gazelles and lama's and a great quantity of rare and tame fowls and roes and deer, which they all knew how to tame and make good use of them.

[15] And now you have expanded, and you became a people and

¹ Literally: 'a new case'.

you are prosperous in earthly respect. However, you put your senses too much on earthly profit, and that is why you have already lost much of your inner wisdom.

[16] After what I have told you now in full truth, you surely will have noticed that I know very well all your life's conditions. And I could tell you still a lot more about your country and life's conditions. But now it is your turn to say for which reason you have come out of your faraway morning land. But speak the pure truth without restraint, because out of My words you surely will have concluded that with Me you cannot escape with a lie or with veiled words."

73. THE INDO-JEWS REPORT ABOUT THE GOAL OF THEIR TRIP



WHEN the married man began to speak and said in well understandable Hebrew: "O Friend, who has informed You so well about our country which is known to only very few foreigners up to this time? You have spoken the full truth, and this is indeed our condition, but how did You discover our secrets that are so well hidden?"

[2] **I** said: "Do not bother about that for the moment, but be cheerful and tell what I have asked you."

[3] **Then the one who was married spoke again and said (the Indo-Jew):** "Dear, our still completely unknown Friend, look, we really have a blessed mountainous country, which could feed twice as much people and animals as it is feeding at this moment, but Satan has also planted self-interest and selfishness in our country. The elders, who want to be the wise men and the leaders of the people, have divided the country among themselves and have made the people their servants. And so there are in our country now about 700 patriarchs, almost each of whom has about 10,000 subordinate servants of both sexes into their service.

[4] But even with us there is already mutual envy, and by that also discord and persecutions, and thus also little wars, because

everyone wants to be the most wise and also the most rich and the most prominent one, and it already happened several times in our days that they almost came to the point that the serving people would choose among the 700 patriarchs a very wise man to be king. But the people are still smart and said: 'God alone is the Lord and King of us all. He has led us out of the terrible imprisonment of the heathens to this beautiful land. Should we now become as unfaithful and disobedient to Him as before our fathers during the time of Samuel, the last judge? Let this be far from us.

[5] Must God bring over us also the justified complaint through the mouth of a prophet, by saying to us with a voice of thunder: 'Look, this people has committed already very great sins against Me, as many as there is grass on the Earth and sand in the sea, and to these sins they still add the greatest of all by being unsatisfied with My really good and wise Fatherly rulership and to desire impetuously a king, just like the heathens have done.' O, let this be far from us. We prefer to serve you still for another 100 years as good workers and cultivate the big pieces of land that you have acquired unjustly, in return for the agreed salary, than choosing a king from among you.

[6] However, it is also written that later God will send a King from the Heavens to all the Jews. And our wise men have already discovered His star and went to search for Him by following the path of the star. When they will come back we surely will hear from them what the situation is concerning the coming of the great King of all the Jews.'

[7] Friend, that assembly of the people for the election of a king out of the 700 patriarchs took place, according to our calendar, 30 years ago. And the people abstained all the more from choosing a king, because after 1 year our wise men came back again and told us very truthfully and very extensively how and where they found the newly born King of the Jews, and with what kind of unheard-of miracles His birth and His existence on Earth were announced and glorified.

[8] Thanks to this message, which was also believed by our 700

patriarchs – although some with a sour face – another election of a king was left out. However, since that time already more than 30 years have passed, and scouts were sent out several times to this place to hear about the King of all the Jews, no matter where in the world He might be living. Even our 3 old astronomers came back here a couple of years ago. If they went back home again with good news we do not know, since our homeland is now already much bigger than when we possessed it for the first time. Now, often a few years are needed before the whole and very big nation can hear the kind of messages that came from the outside into the country where the people are now living far away from each other. [9] So maybe the 3 wise men went back already with very good news. But because of the reason we mentioned, which is faithful and true, we still were not able to hear what kind of news those 3, who left again, brought to our country. Besides, the ever-increasing imperiousness of our patriarchs filled us with all kinds of worries. It really seems as if the hearing of the good news about the new King of Heaven of all the Jews became suspicious to them, and that they have strictly forbidden the wise men to give such news to the people. And so we secretly started our long journey in order to try to discover about the situation here in our old native country concerning the new King.

[10] Our trip was difficult because we could only take a small amount of gold with us, and also only a few precious stones that we are using as a way of exchange. On that long trip we partly had to keep ourselves alive with the roots that are known to us, and partly thanks to the common hospitality of the people in some places. But all these inconveniences did not prevent us to go and seek the One who can and will help us out of all need, as it is written in the prophets.

[11] Despite all our inconveniences and privations we have now arrived in the old homeland of the Jews that was given back to them after 40 years, but which is now again under the rulership of gentiles who are called Romans. And now we also hope in full trust that we did not undertake our long trip in vain. Of course, we

do not have gold, silver or precious stones with which they used to honor kings, but we have a sincere heart that loves the great King of Heaven of all the Jews more than everything else, and this He will not refuse. And with this we want to honor and praise Him our whole life.

[12] But now another thing, dear and extremely wise and all-knowing Friend, you are with many in this dining room and seem to be extremely familiar with all circumstances of the people on the whole wide Earth. Then you surely will also know where the great King is staying. Can He be found in Jerusalem, or in Bethlehem where He was born according to the message of our 3 wise men – who also possess the noble title ‘kings of astronomy’ – or in another city of the once so great and mighty Jewish kingdom, and how and when? Because then we can directly go there tomorrow and search for Him.”

[13] **I said:** “Friend, your surely did not make your trip in vain. However, neither in Jerusalem, nor in Bethlehem or in another city that is full of pride you will find the residence of Him, your new King of the Jews, because He always travels poorly, without any outer worldly glitter, from one place to another, letting the people know about the Kingdom of God and its justice. But where you do not expect it, He will be and will accept you with open arms and heart.

[14] The offering of honor that you want to give Him and have in fact already given, will truly be more dear to Him than all that which men in the world consider as extremely precious treasures, and who are forcibly trying to pull them to themselves. For what counts with Him, is only a pure, loving, humble heart that is filled with the greatest meekness. But the treasures of the world are an abomination in His eyes and are only valuable when they are used for true neighborly love. But where they are used as nourishment for human stinginess, for human pride and imperiousness, and seduce men to laziness, gluttony, revelry, harlotry, robbery, murder and still many other sins, they are an abomination that deserve total damnation in the eyes of Him who

is Lord over everything in Heaven as well as on Earth.

[15] His throne is pure love, and His glitter that shines over everything is the eternal, living truth. To the one who believes in Him, loves Him above all and keeps His commandments, He gives, out of Himself, the eternal life.

[16] Look, this is how the new King of the Jews and also of the gentiles is, and He always gladly and surely let Himself be found by men who search for Him with true love in their heart. And since you are searching Him in this manner, you will also certainly find Him, for He Himself will unexpectedly come to meet you.”

[17] **The married man** said: “O, dear, very wise Friend, from our faces You surely can read how glad You have made us with Your testimony and description of that great King. For this is how He has to be according to the prediction of the old wise men. But You must already very often and very much have had dealings with Him, because You seem to know Him so thoroughly. How does He personally look like? Would You not like to give us a short description about this?”

[18] **I** said: “Look, meanwhile our innkeeper let some good fishes be prepared for you. Go now first to sit at your table and eat them. After that we will continue our conversation.”

[19] **Then the 4 did cheerfully what I had advised them to do.**

74. THE DREAM OF THE LITTLE GIRL



WHEN the fishes were eaten, **the spokesman** said to **the innkeeper**: “O dear friend, you have now given us a real strengthening for our body, but it will not be easy to pay you.”

[2] **The innkeeper** said: “My dear congeners, you should not worry about that, and when you will return home, it will also be taken care of that you will not have to go with empty bags on your return journey. So be cheerful and have no fear or unnecessary worries.”

[3] **The 12 year old girl** who was now also strengthened with food

and drink, took also courage to speak and said to her father: “Listen, father, 3 days ago, when we were also fortunate to find a friend of people with the innkeeper of an inn, I had a predictive dream. However, as usual you said that dreams of children are meaningless, but in that dream I saw this room, and also that we were accepted in this inn in an extremely friendly way. But I saw in my dream still a lot more, which you, when I wanted to tell you, did not want to hear, and after which you ordered me to be silent, but I have the feeling now that my dream will completely come true.”

[4] **Then the father said to his daughter:** “Well then, what more have you dreamed which will come true here? Now I give you permission to tell us your dream completely.”

[5] **Then the girl said:** “I will not relate the dream completely but only the main thing, and this is the following: in my dream I also saw that big table and the same men sitting around it. And look, One of them was now precisely the new King of Heaven for whom we have undertaken our trip. I also could point Him out to you, but I have now heard a voice in myself that commanded me not to do so, and I have to obey that voice. But because everything in my dream comes true here, it might also come true that we will find here the One whom we want to find most of all.”

[6] **The father was very surprised and said:** “My dear child, there could be something true about your dream, but it would be very daring to believe the story of your dream immediately and unconditionally because this is something which is very important and holy. We have to proceed critically and carefully. Thus I will go again to that very wise Man with whom I spoke before and who is obviously a prophet. It will be faster to hear from Him more about the King of Heaven of all the Jews. I asked Him already before to describe that holy King. If He will give that to me, it will not be too difficult to trace Him up and also to recognize Him.”

[7] **Now also the woman said to her husband:** “Listen, my husband, the innocent and pure mind of a child is often closer to God than ours, which has become impure by many passions, and

so he sees and recognizes God's presence before ours. With their sharp eyes, children are often much more capable in searching and finding than we the elderly. But you are in many things too severe and too critical, and I have experienced already several times that in the course of time you admitted that something was true and good which we have told you already since the beginning that it was true and good. Who knows, the same may happen to you also this time."

[8] **The man said:** "This time I would like that you are right. But now the 2 of us men will go to that wise Man and will ask once more to give a personal description of that great King to whom all power in Heaven and on this whole Earth is given."

[9] **After this conversation that was always softly spoken, so that we would not hear anything, the 2 men stood up, went again with great respect to Me and asked Me for a personal description of the great King.**

[10] **With a friendly face I said to the married man:** "Although you have spoken softly about the King, and made an opinion about the dream of your daughter, I still could hear every syllable very well. You would like to hear from Me a personal description of the King, because you think that by that, when you will meet the King somewhere, you will recognize Him immediately to give Him the honor.

[11] **But I say to you:** for those who truly want to know Him, the new King of the Jews has to be recognized especially in the spirit and in all truth, and then they soon will also easily recognize Him personally. But your daughter wanted to describe to you from her dream that she had 3 days ago not far from Damascus, how the King personally looks like. Why actually did you not want to listen to that?"

[12] **The man said:** "Dear, very wise Friend, because with me, as well as with my parents and grandparents, always the wise education principle was practiced that children should surely hear what is good and true, but that they only should speak when something was asked to them, so that they would not become

thoughtless chatterers, because to think a lot and to act accordingly is wiser than much chattering and by that to do little. That is why I did not want that dream to be related by my child to me immediately so that she can practice and strengthen herself in patience and self-denial, which is especially needed with the female sex who are hardly capable to control their tongue.”

[13] **I** said: “Although you are right in this, but because your little daughter has already an extremely silent character, you well could have made a little exception on your fixed rule, because children who are so virtuously well educated are usually much closer to the inner truth of life than grown-up people who have cramped their brains by their tireless investigation of worldly wisdom, after which they finally cannot see the forest between the trees anymore. This is also very much the case with you, for you did not want to dishonor the old name of your tribe – which is not a reproach – but you certainly will also have noticed that a too sharpened knife will always become more quickly blunt than a knife that, although a little more blunt but that is still sharpened well enough. But no matter how, let now your little daughter come here and let her find among us the One whom she has recognized as the new King of the Jews.”

[14] **The man**, as well as his brother-in-law became completely shy and said: “O best, incomprehensible and extremely wise Friend, is that holy great King perhaps really one of you?”

[15] **I** said: “That will soon be apparent, but do now what I have advised you to do.”

[16] After these words the man went away and brought his little daughter to Me.

75. THE GIRL RECOGNIZES THE LORD



WHEN the girl stood with great respect before Me, I very friendly asked her: “Well now, My lovely daughter, tell Me who of us at this table looks most of all like the One you saw in your dream 3 days ago as the great King of all the Jews and as a Lord of Heaven and Earth.”

[2] **The little girl said:** “O Lord, You are putting me, poor girl, heavily to the test.”

[3] **I said:** “Why do you call this a heavy test, My little daughter?”

[4] **The little daughter said:** “O Lord, if someone else would ask me, I easily could give him the answer, but it is difficult for me to say, because it is precisely You who ask me – You who are Yourself the One who I have seen in my dream as the great and above all mighty King, not only of the Jews, but of all men.

[5] But because I have to speak now before You, You who are the almighty Lord and ruler from eternity to eternity over all Heavens and worlds, I therefore say now openly: You Yourself, o Lord, are the One. You are the One whom I have seen in the shining sun. Countless armies of the most blissful angels were around You and highly praised Your most glorious name.

[6] And I asked a wise person, who stood close to me, what Your name was.

[7] And the wise person said: ‘Since the eternal very beginning, not one angel was able to speak out the name of the Most High, for His name is as infinitely great as the infinite space of His creatures of which the Earth that you inhabit is only like the most insignificant dust particle compared to the whole big Earth itself. But the eternal God, Creator and Father came Himself, out of immense love for you, His children, into your flesh, so that you all can completely come close to Him, and by that He also has given a name to Himself which every person on this Earth and also every angel can feel and speak out. And that most holy name is: Father, Love, Truth and Life, but as the Son of Man His name is Jesus.’

[8] Then I saw suns and globes without number in large rows

floating before You, and they all were full of the most beautiful created beings like us, and also other wonderful things, and no matter to where You were looking in the depths of the endless space, I immediately saw again new, big and beautiful creatures coming into existence. O Lord, o Love, o Father, o my King Jesus. How endlessly big, mighty and above all holy and glorious You are in Yourself from eternity to eternity. No one is like You in eternity. O, forgive me for the weakness of my tongue, for it is not able to speak out Your praise and Your honor in a more dignified manner.”

[9] Then the girl sank down on her knees and glorified and praised Me quietly in her heart while she was crying from sheer love.

[10] When her father, her uncle and also her mother heard that, they also fell on their knees and began to loudly worship Me.

[11] But I said: “Stand up, My lovely children, for the Father does not want to be worshipped as the heathens worship an idol, but He simply and solely wants to be truthfully loved. For because of your love for Him He allowed that you would find Him here. I am the One you sought. But stand up now and be happy and cheerful. Come now and sit at this table and quench yourselves with the wine with which I will fill your cups. You, little daughter of the loveliest kind, come with your mother to sit at My right hand, and you 2 men, come to sit at My left hand. We still have 1 hour until midnight, and we still will discuss with each other about very important things.”

[12] When I had said that, **the 4** stood up from the ground with deep respect and said: “O, incomprehensible great Love, o Lord, King and Father Jesus, let us take place again at that little table where we sat before, for we feel too unworthy to be completely near to You now.”

[13] I said: “Once I have said something, so it must remain. Am I not present everywhere in spirit? Where do you want to hide so that the light of My eyes would not find you? So be cheerful and happy, because I allowed you to find Me. Because now, also I am, just like you, a human being of flesh and blood on this Earth, and I

am as a Friend and Brother among you.”

[14] After I spoke to them like this, the 4 came finally and sat with Me. The little girl did not turn away her eyes from Me and began to almost completely shine from sheer love for Me, which was even noticed by My disciples.

[15] I said to the innkeeper: “Bring 4 clean and completely empty cups, for I truly want to give these 4 friends of Mine a true strengthening with My wine. Because for My sake they have suffered with all patience, and together with that, still with true heroic courage for many days every inconvenience that poor people have to suffer on such long trips, and that is why they will be indemnified and rewarded here.”

[16] Then the innkeeper left and brought 3 clean empty cups and put them before the 4 poor guests.

[17] When the cups stood before them I said, while I was looking at the little girl: “You, My lovely little daughter, have seen in your dream how in the endless space new creations came into existence to where the light from My eyes was directed. And look now, I will let the light from My eyes penetrate into your cups that are empty until now, then they will immediately be filled with the purest wine from the Heavens. Then drink this wine out of love for Me, then by that you will receive the power and the strength which will give you the right courage to speak with Me. And what I will say to you, you will easily be able to bear and remember, and then you will also be able to proclaim My name to your brothers in your country.”

[18] Then I looked to the empty cups and at the same moment they were filled with the best and purest wine about which the 4 were extremely surprised.

[19] When the 4 cups, that were now filled with the best wine, stood in front of the 4, I said to them: “Now be not afraid or shy, and drink the new wine that has been created for you. For as My word and will awakens the whole man and brings him to life, so it is the same with this wine that is equal to My word and will. It will awaken you to receive the eternal life of your souls. So drink.”

[20] When I spoke to them like that, the 4 took very respectfully their cups in their hand and drank the wine to the last drop, because it was so tasteful to them. When the wine came into their body, the exaggerated respect for Me disappeared and changed into love, and that only gave them the right courage to speak with Me openly, like children who speak openly and frankly with their parents.

76. THE POWER OF THE SPIRIT



HE little girl was then the first to ask Me: “O Lord and Master and highest King full of godly might and power, how was it actually possible for You to create this truly heavenly wine into the cups, purely out of nothing, and also so suddenly that it could not be seen how it came into the cups? Of course I know that nothing is impossible for God’s power and that God has created all that existed and still continues to create. But when He creates, God always follows a certain order. That means that in order to achieve something perfect, one thing always precedes the other, and then the main thing always appears as a result of often many preceding processes, which is also according to all truth.

[2] Yes, the wine that comes from the grapevine is not a less miracle. However, with the existence of the wine from the grapevine there are a lot of preceding processes until the full ripeness of the grape. But here with the actual creation of the very best wine into the cups there was no process, but You wanted it, and immediately the cups were full of wine. How is that actually possible?”

[3] **I** said: “Listen, My lovely little daughter, although you are only 12 years old, your mind reaches like after 40 years of good development. Hardly anyone has come to Me with such kind of question. Yes, My lovely little daughter, the question that you have asked here is very clear and understandable, but the answer that I have to give on that, will certainly not appear as clear and

understandable to you all. But because you have asked it, you will also receive the answer from Me.

[4] Look, the wine that is gradually prepared by the grapevine is just as much a miracle as this wine that I suddenly created here before you. I also could continuously create all the other things like the clouds and the rain in the air, and like I also have created here now before you the strengthening wine out of the air, in which all elements that are needed for the wine are already present, as well as everything that is needed for the existence of all the other created things. Man cannot see this with his physical eyes, but only the spirit can see it, separate it and unite it, and then accomplish it suddenly or – in order to put the human mind, the love and the patience to the test, and also to awaken the activity of men and to give no chance to men's laziness – step by step, in the manner that is known to you. But it is always only one and the same Spirit that is able to accomplish everything in one or the other way, because it is ultimately the very beginning of everything and will also always be, because all that exists is basically only the might, power, love, wisdom and will of the Spirit.

[5] Also every person possesses such a spirit, which will only be active in man when he will know God's will completely and will be active according to that will, and unite his spirit with the soul in man by way of the pure love for God, and from that for his fellowman, and that soul becomes himself through that, the pure love and the will of God. Once this has taken place in man, then he is also like God in this, and he can also accomplish things, which no other human being with his purely outer reason can understand.

[6] But now you are by the Source to hear God's will and to come to know it for your life. If you act according to that will – which depends on your completely free will – you will by that acquire the almighty will of God and thus be able to accomplish everything.

[7] However, in God's will lives also the highest wisdom. Therefore, he can and will also accomplish nothing that would be contrary to God's wisdom. So whoever has acquired God's will

by acting accordingly, has also acquired God's wisdom without which the will could accomplish nothing. And so, someone who acts according to God's will is full of the true light of life and full of wisdom, which is alive through the love for God and fellowman. And see now, My dearest little daughter, here you have now a completely sincere and all-containing truth on the question that you have asked Me, and tell Me now if you have also understood it."

[8] **The little daughter**, who was well educated and well instructed, said: "O, above all great and mighty King, Lord and Master, I have the feeling that I have understood the right meaning of Your words, but I only will be capable to penetrate to the clear depth of this truth, which can only be understood by a very pure spirit, when also I will come to the point that my soul will be one with the spirit, as You said. Thank You, o Lord and Master, for Your very wise lesson."

[9] **I** said: "You have spoken very well now, and I say that you will reach that point sooner than you think, in which, as I have told you, you will be perfect and equal to God, because you have already the right love for Me and so also the right love for your fellowman. That love is the only and most sure active way that unifies the spirit with the soul, because that love in the soul is actually already the Spirit of God. Let it grow strong through good deeds, then you surely will soon be convinced of its wonderful might and power in you and also outside of you."

[10] **The one** who wants to search and to fathom God with his reason will have a difficult task and will hardly come even 1 step forward, but the one who searches God with the love in his heart, will soon find Him and will easily reach his true destiny of life. Do you understand that?"

[11] **The little girl** said: "O great Lord and Master, that I have well understood now, for it suddenly became illuminated in myself, and I also understand now more clearly than before the answer that You gave to my question. So I also understand now my dream, and I realize that it was only Your Spirit that put it in my soul, for

otherwise, out of herself she would never be able to have such a clear view in the eternal inestimable depths of Your creations.”

[12] Now **I** said to the parents of the little girl: “This child will become a light for you. And when she, out of My Spirit in her, will announce certain things to you, then do not behave like 3 days ago near Damascus. – But now your cups should be filled once more, and you also should empty them for the 2nd time.”

[13] Then **the woman** said: “O Lord, this is not necessary, for we are already satiated and strengthened more than enough.”

[14] **I** said: “Woman, do not interfere with what I do for you all. Yes, in the wine that the grapevine gives you, there is also for man a sedating and soiling spirit, which does not make the soul lighter but darker, but in the wine that I am giving you here from the Heavens there is the spirit of the true and living love and wisdom, for this is actually My word and My will. Therefore, you also should drink it without any fear or shyness, so that you will receive the strength to proclaim in My name My word and My will to the other people in your country.”

[15] When I had said that, the 4 asked Me to fill the cups once more with the wine of wonder. And I looked at the cups, just like before, and immediately they were filled with the best and purest wine. Then I said to the 4 that they should empty the cups, and this they did tastefully and with pleasure.

[16] After they also this time had finished the wine, they felt more and more light and more open of heart, and the married man began to speak very wisely, so that also **My disciples** were very surprised about it, and some of them made the remark among themselves: “Look, with a few sips of wonder wine a couple of times He made those people from India wise and initiated in the whole teaching. Why does He also not do that with the other people?”

[17] **I** said: “Why do you mind when I do what I want? If I know to give every plant the right nourishment and to every animal the food that it suits well, then I also will know how I have to provide and give this or that person his spiritual food. You are always around Me and hear and see everything, but be also attentive as to

how I treat people and how I teach each one of them according to the nature of their soul, and do likewise, then you will have good results. But these 4 are only with Me until tomorrow noon, and still they have to become a tool for Me. And because their souls are very capable for it, I make them faster competent for this function, as I also made it possible for the 72 disciples in Emmaus. If you understand this, then be satisfied.”

[18] Then the disciples became quiet again. And I continued to instruct the 4 still further about the Kingdom of God.

[19] After I had well instructed the 4 about the Kingdom of God in man on this Earth, and also told them what it will bring about, and also that My kingship and My Kingdom are not of this world, I told the innkeeper that he should show the 4 a place to rest, since it was already 1 hour after midnight. The innkeeper did that immediately and the 4 went to rest. We however, as happened oftentimes, were still sitting at our table and rested there until sunrise. Also the innkeeper rested beside us at a small table.

[20] In the morning, the innkeeper was as usual already awake 1 hour before sunrise, and he arranged everything before the sun was up, because it was Sabbath, and then from sunrise until sunset all servile work ended. So he also let the morning meal be prepared before sunrise, so that it also would be consumed before that time, for in that respect he was a strict Jew.

77. THE TRUE SANCTIFICATION OF THE SABBATH



INCE I knew his weakness I put him to the test, so I slept with My disciples until sunrise, which made the Sabbath-conscious of the innkeeper restless.

[2] After the sun had completely risen, I left the table with My disciples and went outside, what I mostly used to do in any other place.

[3] However, **the innkeeper** came directly after Me, greeted Me very respectfully, as also the disciples, and asked Me: “O Lord and Master, what must be done now? It is the Sabbath today. The morning meal was already prepared before sunrise. Do You also want to take it after sunrise, and should I also give food to the 4 from India in the daytime?”

[4] I said: “O My dear friend, look, on other occasions you are in all respects really a wise man, but what concerns the celebration of the Sabbath you are still like the blind Pharisees who keep the letter of the law, but who never knew about its spirit. If you give feed to your sheep, oxen, cows, calves, donkeys and goats, just like on a working day – which is certainly also a servile work – then why must men fast? Does God consider men less than your domestic animals? Besides, I am today, as well as eternities ago, also Lord over the Sabbath, as well as over every other day, which are, just like the Sabbath, a day of the Lord. Should I then not do on a Sabbath the same as on any other day?”

[5] Who let the sun come up? Who let the grass grow? Who let the winds blow and who let the clouds pass by? Who drives the water in the wells, brooks, rivers and streams? Who brings the sea into movement from one end of the Earth to the other? Who drives your blood in the veins, and the heart in the chest – mind you – also on the Sabbath?

[6] If I would rest on a Sabbath, even for one moment, would the whole creation not go to ruin?

[7] Look, to perform works of true neighborly love means to Me: to truly serve God and men, which is certainly more important than

celebrating the Sabbath in laziness. Therefore, perform good works also on the Sabbath, then you will celebrate the Sabbath in the manner that is most pleasing to Me, the Lord.

[8] And now we will return to the dining hall to partake of the morning meal, and the 4 Indo-Jews, who have their Sabbath only the day after tomorrow, should do the same.”

[9] When the innkeeper heard Me saying that, he realized immediately the great foolishness of the outer celebration of the Sabbath and let the morning meal be set on the table. And we went to the dining hall, sat at the table and we very cheerfully partook of the morning meal.

[10] Now came also the 4 Indo-Jews, and I told them to sit at our table to share the morning meal with us, which they also did with great pleasure, for they did not know that in Galilee, as well as in the whole Jewish land, the Sabbath was celebrated on that day.

[11] After we had taken the morning meal, the Sabbath-shouter came through the streets of the little city Kana, who called the people, great and small, young and old, to go to the synagogue. Now the 4 were frightened because they heard now that today it was the true, ancient Jewish Sabbath, and they had taken a morning meal after sunrise.

[12] But **I** said: “I am the Lord, also over the Sabbath. If I truly do not count this as a sin to you, then why should you burden your conscious?”

[13] **The man** said: “We thank You, o Lord, for Your word of mercy that comforts our hearts tremendously, for if we would have sinned now before You, then You certainly would have told us and rebuked us. However, how is it possible that it is not a sin in Your eyes what was called a sin according to the law of Moses? Then why did Moses give such laws as if from God to the people?”

[14] **I** said: “Otherwise you are truly a wise man and well acquainted with the Scripture of Moses. The letter you know indeed, and the word is not strange to you, but the true spirit, which makes everything alive, and is hidden in the word, is still

strange to you, just like it became strange to all the Jews a long time before the Babylonian captivity. That is why you still hold on to the dead bark, but the essence and the activity of the living marrow within the tree is strange to you. If you damage the old bark of a tree, it will bring no visible damage to the life of the tree, but if you damage the marrow of a tree, that will be a sin against the life of the tree, because the tree will wither after that and will thus die.

[15] Look, under the pharaohs in Egypt the Israelites became lazy, and gluttons like the animals. They almost completely forgot the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob and they thought highly of the idols of the Egyptians. Only a few remained loyal to the one, true God, and they prayed to God that He would save His people from the hard bondage and unscrupulous tyranny of the Egyptians. And God did so through Moses, as you well know.

[16] However, for 40 years in the desert, with the daily visible help of Jehovah, Moses had much to do with the degenerated people to lift them up by means of wise teachings and suitable laws unto that state in which man should live according to God's order. A degenerated people needed also laws that prescribed to man when, what, how much and how often he should eat and drink on a day, and how he should clothe himself and cleanse his body.

[17] Also the people were very inclined to laziness and did not want to do any work on any day, and Moses gave them only the 7th day to celebrate and to rest, and on that day they were instructed by the leaders about God, His order, His will and His guidance, and they were seriously warned not to rebel against the laws.

[18] But once man, out of his own free will, acquires God's order and becomes active in all that is good, true and right, it can be no sin to him when he as a completely healthy human being will not take any more medicines that a sick person has to take. Therefore, also you, who are a god-fearing and righteous man, you will not sin against the celebration of the Sabbath when you will take food and drink, always with measure, also after sunrise, at noon time and also, when you are hungry, before sunset, and when you will

do good to your fellowman just like on a working day. Do as I do, then you will do what is right and live.

[19] To what advantage is it for the celebration of the Sabbath when the Jews are excessively stuffing themselves with food and drink, often already 3 hours before sunrise, and this so much so that during the whole Sabbath they can hardly walk or stand? And after sunset they again begin to revel and guzzle until midnight, and so they cannot do any work the next working day. Know that such celebration of the Sabbath is in My eyes an abomination. However, if you keep the Sabbath in the manner that I have shown you, then this is My will and thus certainly pleasing to Me. Therefore, remember always: the letter of the law kills, it is only the inner spirit of love and truth that makes you alive.”

[20] When the man heard Me saying that, he and the 3 others thanked Me for this lesson, and they all became cheerful.

[21] Then the innkeeper asked Me if he had to go to the synagogue with his family or if he also could stay at home.

[22] I said: “Who is more, I or the synagogue? Let your personnel go to it and send an offering to the rabbi, which is more dear to him than your presence, but you better stay home, because soon a caravan from Persia will come here and will give you much work to do.”

[23] **The innkeeper** said: “O Lord and Master, now that today it is a New Moon Sabbath, this is very inconvenient, because we innkeepers have a strict law that forbids us to take in a Jew, let alone a stranger, into the inns on this kind of Sabbath.”

[24] I said: “It is good in My eyes when you do good, as I have said to you, and also before to the men from India, but if you are unnecessarily afraid of the chief of the synagogue, then send him, through your chief servant, an offering of exemption, then he gladly will give you that permission.”

[25] The innkeeper did so, and the chief servant brought to him immediately a card of exemption, valid for 3 Sabbaths. And the innkeeper was very glad about that, because the caravan gave him a hundredfold profit compared to what he paid for the card.

[26] **Then the innkeeper asked Me:** “Lord and Master, is it right what the chief of the synagogue did? By paying an offering for an exemption to break the Sabbath, which is to him an extremely great and most punishable sin, he allows me to commit this sin with my whole family, and this without any worry, as if I never had to fear any punishment for that.”

[27] **I said:** “Friend, if, according to his conscious and in the light of his faith, the chief really thinks that the breaking of the Sabbath is a sin, then the sin will be on his account, because for money he let others commit it. But if he has no faith and still pretends before the people that he believes firmly and has no doubt that he considers it as an extremely punishable sin according to the Scripture – which he says for the sake of appearances – giving severe sermons of punishment about it, then he is not only an equally frequent breaker of the Sabbath as those many to whom, for money, he gave permission to commit a sin, but he also commits by that the still much greater sin of lie, hypocrisy and greediness, because he gave up his faith for the sake of his greed.

[28] **But the one who, like you now, has received permission to, so-called, profane the Sabbath, can all the more be encouraged to do good works on the Sabbath, because it is My will to celebrate the Sabbath in this manner.”**

[29] **When the innkeeper heard that from Me, he immediately told his personnel that they should make all the necessary things ready to serve a big caravan.**

[30] **And everybody went to work, and this all the more zealously because the first line of the caravan did already arrive before the inn.**

78. THE GROUP FROM PERSIA IN THE INN



FEW neighbors, who were strongly attached to the observance of the Sabbath, noticed however that the personnel of the innkeeper were as busy as on a working day, and therefore they came to the innkeeper and said: “You do not seem to know that today it is a New Moon Sabbath?”

[2] **The innkeeper said:** “Clean up first before your house doors. I have already cleaned up mine. Here is the proof of my exemption that I bought from the chief in return of an offering, and you should not further worry about me.”

[3] **After these words, the neighbors left again, and the personnel waited for the caravan that already crossed the little city. When they arrived all together with their camels and all kinds of goods in the big farmyard and the helpers of the innkeeper had taken sufficient feed for the animals, an interpreter came to tell the innkeeper what kind of food he should prepare for the arrived businessmen from Persia.**

[4] **But the innkeeper said:** “I certainly will serve you with what is in my power, but you have asked me some drinks and special food which I as a Jew have not known until now, and these things I do not have. But you can have meat as we are eating it, very pure and tastefully prepared, fine wheat bread, honey, milk and cheese, as well as very noble fishes from the Lake of Galilee, which is not far away from here.”

[5] **On these words the interpreter went to his lords and told them with what they could be served in this inn, and they were satisfied with that.**

[6] **Soon after that, they entered a second, bigger dining hall, where the tables and a sufficient number of chairs and benches were already set in the best of order. Soon they all took a seat and ordered immediately bread, wine and salt, which was then also served as soon as possible. And they all praised the wine and the bread, and acknowledged that they never had eaten such good bread or drunk such fine and tasty wine.**

[7] At first **the innkeeper** did not understand the unanimous praise of the many Persian businessmen, and he said to Me: “Lord and Master, these kind of caravans from the far Morning Land arrived here many times, and they all have found everything well in order, but I really cannot remember that they praised my bread and wine in such an extreme way as this time. Did You, o Lord and Master, perhaps perform a new sign again?”

[8] While I was in the company of the 4 people from India, instructing them in many things, I said: “Go to your bread storeroom and to your wine cellar and check it out.”

[9] Then the innkeeper went to check it out and found in the bread storeroom and also in the wine cellar a big provision, and his wife found also such a big provision in the storeroom and the big fish tank. He came back, thanked Me with all his heart and then said: “But Lord and Master, what did I do for You to deserve this, that You have found me worthy now for already the 2nd time to receive such great favor?”

[10] I said: “For the one who will, just like you, treat the strangers always well, righteously, fair and full of mercy, who will take up the poor, and who will not close his heart and door for anyone, I will also not close My heart. And My heart is the true entrance gate to the Kingdom of Heaven which is the eternal, most blissful life of the soul. And I know that you have always acted like that. Know therefore, that I also will treat you as you will treat your fellow brothers in My name. And what is valid to you as a real promise from My mouth and heart, is, at all times of the Earth, also valid for everyone who will be in everything the same as you are.

[11] O, I very well know that, as an innkeeper of an inn, your provisions were often very low and that your otherwise virtuous woman criticized you bitterly, because in her opinion you were too cheap for the strangers and you were too good and too merciful to the poor. But you said: the one who thinks of, and acts righteously and fairly to his fellowmen will never be forsaken by God, and the prayers of the one who has been really merciful to the poor will

always be heard and so he will find mercy.

[12] Look, since this was how you thought in your heart already a long time before you recognized Me personally, and also acted that way according to your capability, I came now to you already for the 2nd time, and I do for you what you have done to your many fellowmen for Me, because the one who does something to the poor in My name, while he is also righteous and fair to the strangers, he has done it for Me, and I will reward him already here, and a multiple times in the other life. And now you will easily understand who it was who blessed your supplies so abundantly, and why.”

[13] When the innkeeper heard this from My mouth, he thanked Me again, went to the kitchen to tell that also to his wife who was very busy. She also came immediately to Me in the hall and thanked Me for the great mercy and compassion that I had shown to them.

[14] And I said to the woman: “You also, be of the same heart as your husband, then from now on you will stay healthy in body and soul. In the future you will no more have to suffer any need. But go now and continue your work.”

[15] The woman thanked Me once more and went then quickly to the kitchen where she still had many things to do.

79. THE LORD HEALS THE SICK TRADE LEADER OF THE BUSINESSMEN



WHEN a couple of Persians with the interpreter came to us and wanted to speak to the innkeeper.

[2] The innkeeper asked them very politely what their request was.

[3] And **the interpreter** said: “Dear friend, we already took up accommodation here a few times and we always have found in you a righteous, fair and thus also rare friend of men. That is why we have visited you also this time on our business trip to Tyre. We were always satisfied about you, and also you will never have any

reason to complain about us. This time however, coming here on our trip, we were visited by misfortune by an inscrutable decree of a god, which will have very bad results for the business that we do here for the sake of our family members at home.

[4] Although we did not lose any of our treasures and goods that we took along, but what is in fact almost worse than the kind of loss I just mentioned, is the fact that our most important and best trade leader became sick. He already complained during a couple of days that from time to time he is overtaken by unusual pains in his stomach and also in his head. When he satiated himself now with your bread and wine, he had these pains again, and this time alarmingly much more severe. Is there perhaps a doctor here who could help our trade leader? Truly, he will be rewarded like a king. But if the good man cannot be helped immediately – as is often the case with these kinds of sicknesses – then we would like to ask you if we could not entrust our suffering friend to your care here. And if we will return here in a few days, what you can most certainly believe, we will reward you tenfold for everything that you needed for the treatment of our friend.”

[5] **The innkeeper said:** “Dear friends, you really did not have to use so many words for that, because I will immediately take care of everything. Although there is in my house now a very first and best Doctor who could heal the sick man instantly forever, but of those who seek His help He wants a complete faith without any doubting, according to our old Jewish tradition. However, you only believe in certain gods that were invented by men who can never help anyone, and not in the one, true and living God of the Jews who is the only One who is almighty and who also can and wants to help everyone who asks Him. So I do not know if the mentioned Doctor in my house will want to help your sick friend.”

[6] **The interpreter said:** “Friend, you are very mistaken about us if you think that we are the same idol worshippers like our old forefathers during the Babylonian domination. We also know the only true God of the Jews, and worship Him quietly in our heart. Only for the sake of appearances, for the blind world, we enter

now and then still an old pagan temple of idols and admire in it the hardly imaginable foolishness and blindness of the people. We also have already oftentimes prayed quietly in our heart to the one, only true God to let come up also in our Morning Land a true light of life, because we languished already long enough in the deepest night of life, which we can of course only know because we have business dealings with many nations, and in this manner we have acquired many comforting truths, but our prayers were in vain.

[7] For a born-blind person, the personal eternal night is certainly no trouble, and he has no desire for the light of which he does not know its value, but the one who was able to see and became then blind will certainly miss the light in a painful manner. And this is the way we feel also, since we became seeing for already a long time while we at home must walk around as if blindfolded.

[8] From this you can certainly conclude that your light is not strange to us. And since you can now figure out that we Persians are also capable to believe in your manner – and your Doctor who can certainly help our sick friend by way of faith will find no fault with us – you surely can ask Him on our behalf to take care of our friend.”

[9] **The innkeeper said:** “It certainly will be as you told me, but the Doctor who is recommended by me is a wonderful discerning Man. He can look into the deepest inner being of men. He knows even the most secret thoughts and knows precisely what kind of heart and mind someone has. But He is also so powerful in His will that even all elements and all powers of nature must obey to it. If you like Him that way, while He possesses such qualities, I surely want to present Him to you.”

[10] **The interpreter said:** “With such qualities we certainly will all like Him very much, and at the same time He is as we have wished for. So you can present Him to us now all the more reassured, being certain that in the view of our *good* conduct we have no fear for Him, and we will do everything He wants from us.”

[11] **Now I Myself said to the interpreter:** “Friends, let us save the

innkeeper the trouble to present to you that Doctor who can do everything. I Myself am the One, and for your sake I have stayed here, for I knew already a long time beforehand that you would need Me. I announced your arrival already 1 hour ago, so that you would find provision today according to your needs, because it is even a New Moon Sabbath on which day no Jew may do anything without the permission of a priest.

[12] And so I also know that your loyal and experienced trade leader was taken care of in a badly equipped inn already 3 days ago near the Euphrates and has greatly spoiled his stomach with a bad fish and an even worse wine, and if I would not have known this as I know this now, he would have died shortly after. Only My power and might, which is completely unknown to you until now has saved him up to this hour and will keep him sound and well if you will believe in Me and in the power and might of the one, only true God of the Jews.”

[13] **The interpreter** said: “O wonderful Master in the highest and most important art and science on Earth. Through Your words we became now completely convinced in our heart that there is hardly something impossible for You, and thus we believe also firmly and without any doubt that You certainly and without failing will help our friend if You want it. And in our comforting conviction that You will help our friend, we ask You to kindly determine to us beforehand, which offering we can pay You for that.”

[14] **I** said: “This will be far from Me, because for My livelihood and that of My disciples I do not and never will need any human offerings. But let us now go to your sick friend, then we will see if and how he can be helped.”

[15] That was the greatest wish of the 3 Persians, and they brought Me to the sick person who was twisting like a half trampled worm and crawled and reared from pain, and cried for help or for death.

[16] When I walked to him, I immediately put My right hand on his stomach pit and the terrible cramp left him forever. So on that same moment he became healthy as never before, because already

since birth he suffered from a weak stomach, but now his stomach was also healed from his old weakness, and the sick man became completely healthy.

80. THE LORD'S ASSIGNMENT TO THE PERSIANS



AFTER he stood up from his couch, being now completely healthy, he walked very friendly to Me and said (**the healed one**): “O most wonderful Doctor on the whole Earth, firstly my very great thanks to You and to your God who has put such a miraculous healing power in Your hands with which You have freed me from my totally desperate pains. Now ask all my much gold and still other valuable things as reward for Your art and effort, and it will be Yours.”

[2] **I** said: “I do not need all that at any time, for if gold were important to Me, then also I could not have helped you. I only look at a loyal heart that loves God above all and his fellowmen like himself. Wherever I see that, also with a gentile, I help everyone who needs My help. So you can keep your gold for other good purposes that are pleasing to God, namely for true neighborly love.

[3] **B**ut when you travel, you should beware of spoiled fishes. And let only those fishes be prepared for you, which you have seen previously, being still fresh and alive and swimming in clean water. Because all spoiled meat, especially that of fish, is harmful for the physical health of man. Remember this for the well being of your body.

[4] **B**ut now I will say something else to all of you, which is much more important than the complete health of your body, and that is the complete health of your souls. You can receive it and keep it for eternal life if you precisely will keep the laws that some of you know well, despite the fact that you are not circumcised. Then your hearts will be circumcised, which is in God's eyes endlessly much more valuable than the circumcision that you know of the Jews, whose heart is nevertheless for the greatest part uncircumcised.

[5] **I**n about 3 years, counted from now on, some of My disciples

will also come to you in your country, and they will announce to you the coming of the Kingdom of God and its justice to all people on this Earth. Receive them instead of Me, and believe their words, then you will by that receive the light, for which you as the better ones, are longing for already a long time, namely the light of the one, only true God and Father of all the Jews, as well as all men on this Earth, and by that, also the eternal life of your soul. This is the only thing I ask from you now as reward for the love that I gave to your loyal leader.

[6] And when after a few days you will come in Tyre and Sidon, then try to meet the old supreme governor of the city, whom you also know. Tell him what happened to you here and send him My greetings. He will then disclose to you many things about Me, for he knows Me already since My childhood and loves Me more than his life.

[7] You will also meet there a wonderful young man. He will give you much exalted wisdom if you pay attention to him. (This is Raphael who stayed from time to time visibly at the palace of Cyrenius).

[8] And be now happy and cheerful, and think about Me in the name of Jehovah of the Jews, then you will be spared from every trouble, as far as your body and your soul is concerned.”

[9] Then I left the Persians after they promised Me very truthfully to observe everything I asked from them in loving words, and this obviously only for the great benefit of their own life.

[10] The interpreter and the healed one escorted Me and the innkeeper to our smaller dining hall, and they thanked Me once again for the love and mercy that was shown to them, as they expressed themselves.

[11] But **I** answered them: “Why do you speak here about a shown love and mercy to you? Do you not know that only the kings of the Earth distribute this as they please?”

[12] **The interpreter** said: “O dear Friend, do not speak about the mercy of a king. The greatest mercy of a king, which he, in his arrogance, will now and then give to a blind favorite one of the

throne, is not even a drop of dew compared to the whole sea of mercy that You have given us. You, Friend, are with Your divine quality more than all ever so proud kings of the Earth who think to be mighty. Because by Your word and will You can give back the complete health of a sick person, but when kings become sick, they cannot help themselves, let alone another sick person. They surely can wound and kill, but to heal the wounded and even to awaken the dead to life again, this they cannot do. That is why the greatest mercy *of a king* to a person is not worth mentioning compared to this one true mercy that You have shown us, because Your mercy went together with Your love and true compassion, but to the mercy of a king precedes usually the greatest pride and inner contempt for poor mankind. Woe the one who has received a great mercy from a king, because if he then will not always crawl before the king as an obedient worm, his mercy will become his greatest calamity. That is why we never desired the mercy of a king, but from You we ask You not to leave us with Your true mercy.”

[13] **I** said: “If this is the feeling in your heart, then also My mercy that you have recognized will never again be separated from you. Who stays in My love through his love, in him will also be My love through his love for Me, and thus also My mercy that only consists of My love.”

[14] **The 2** thanked Me once more for this promise, bowed deeply before Me and went then fully encouraged to their companions who were greatly astonished about My healing art.

81. THE LORD LEAVES KANA



WHEN the 2 joined them, they talked a lot about Me and gave their opinion, but what was most striking to one of them was My unselfishness.

[2] **And the interpreter said:** “Friends, he who can do everything like that wonder Doctor, does really not need the treasures of the world, since He possesses with His divine qualities endlessly much more noble treasures. And it has been a well-known typical quality of all truly great and wise men on Earth that they despise the perishable goods of this world. So we should not be surprised here when this Man also does not have any love for the treasures of this world. I also would not have any if I would possess His truly divine qualities. However, our innkeeper, who in fact has always been very good and fair – and it is thanks to him in the first place that we were able to come to know the wonder Doctor – should be indemnified by us instead of that extremely unselfish Doctor.”

[3] **They all agreed to that, and they determined an amount of 10 pounds of gold and 100 pounds of silver above the amount of the normal treatment, namely 2 silver coins per person, inclusive *the service of the personnel and the pack animals.***

[4] **The caravan stayed only until after noontime and continued then its trip in a cheerful mood and filled with the best of expectations to the places where they had to do business.**

[5] **I said to the innkeeper:** “I stayed with you for some time now, which was fruitful for Me and also for you. Instead of Me you will be greatly blessed by the Persians. Therefore, remember also in My name those who are really poor, as you have always done without any special earthly means, then My blessing will not leave you.

[6] **When the local priests will ask you after sunset what kind of people you have received, you can mention My name, and when they will ask you what I have said and done, then tell them: ‘Nothing but good things.’ When they will ask you more questions, then do not go into detail, because this adulterous kind of people does not deserve to have part in the Kingdom of God.**

Keep it to yourself, for your house and for the poor of spirit. At a good opportunity you can proclaim to them the gospel, which I have entrusted to you, then in this manner you will perfectly feed in My name those who are hungry, quench the thirsty ones, clothe the naked and release those who are imprisoned, by which you will find later, in the other life in My Kingdom, a great reward.

[7] But I will leave now immediately with My disciples. So let them not prepare a midday meal for us. Do not tell the Persians right away that I have left, but when they will ask you about Me, then tell them that I went somewhere else to heal sick people. Whereto, that you cannot tell them, for I will also not tell you, because I have My reasons for that. Now do what I have told you. I will actively remain with you with My full blessing, as well as with everyone who acts according to My teaching, who believes in Me and who loves the Father in Me above all.”

[8] After I had said that to the innkeeper, he wanted to call his whole family together to receive My blessing and to thank Me for the healing.

[9] But I did not allow that and said: “As once the whole people of Israel was blessed in Abraham, so also is your family *blessed* through you. So leave this out. It would only cause unnecessary sensation.”

[10] When the innkeeper heard what I said, he was completely satisfied, thanked Me once more for everything, and I gave the disciples the sign to leave.

[11] Very quietly we went immediately outside through a backdoor, so that we would not cause a sensation, and traveled quickly along a footpath towards Kis.

THE LORD IN KIS AT THE LAKE OF GALILEE

82. THE LORD MEETS PHILOPOLD



WHEN we left Kana it was still 1 ½ hour before noon, and because we now and then used our fast way of traveling we arrived exactly at noontime at the Lake of Galilee, not too far from the big tollhouse where our Mathew was formerly a scribe into the service of the Romans. From there it was also not too far from Kis, and, as known, there was also a big tollhouse.

[2] When we came at the lake, we sat down, rested for 1 hour and looked at the waves that were strongly moving. And the disciples wanted to go fishing.

[3] **Peter** said: “Too bad we do not have any nets now. Otherwise we quickly could make a good catch.”

[4] **I** said: “Do you not think about the Sabbath today? He who is hungry may also fish on a Sabbath if the day before he was not able to acquire a provision, but if it is not necessary, every Jew should keep the old law, so that the little ones would not take offence at him.

[5] To do good, also on a Sabbath, that is My teaching and My will, but to catch fish in the lake on a Sabbath without necessity, is neither correct according to the law, neither according to My teaching. So leave your desire for fishing. I have made you fishers of men, and when your time will soon come, you also will be able to work on the Sabbaths.”

[6] While I was talking like that, several Greeks came along, who were watching us from a certain distance. They guessed among themselves who we were.

[7] **Some of them** said: “These are Jewish fishermen who celebrate their Sabbath today.”

[8] **But others** said: “They also could be Greeks, for we also can see Greeks among them who do not have to celebrate the Sabbath of the Jews if they do not want to do this of their free will.”

[9] Then they took courage and came to us.

[10] When they came close to us, **one of them** asked us at once: “What are you actually doing here on a Sabbath on which most Jews are usually meeting in one or the other synagogue? Or are you perhaps Greeks? Then why are several of you wearing Jewish clothes?”

[11] **I** said: “All this is of no concern to you, for you are not yet ripe to hear from Me the words of life, and so I will not talk much to you.

[12] You are servants of Kisjona¹ in Kis. Go therefore ahead of us to Kis and tell Kisjona that the Lord with His disciples will come to him. Then Kisjona will surely tell you who we are. You can go now, and do not disturb us any longer in our rest and meditation.”

[13] Then the Greeks became frightened, left us quickly and continued their way hastily.

[14] When they were out of our sight, we also stood up and walked further on along the shore. After about 2 hours we came close to the village Kis. Now we left the shore and walked on the large road on which, at a certain distance from us, walked a man who was in deep thought. He did not notice at all that we were coming closer to him and continued his walk. Only after I came very close to him, he looked around him and was considerably frightened when he noticed that we, who were many, were so close to him.

[15] **I** addressed Myself to him and said: “Philopold, do you not recognize Me? And since early this morning you thought about nothing else except about Me in your heart.”

[16] Now Philopold looked at Me very surprised, and from happiness he hugged Me. At first, he hardly could speak, but My love and friendliness gave him soon the necessary courage, and we spoke for 1 hour with each other about many things. The disciples were very glad about that, and when the now completely happy Philopold inquired from them about the things I told him, they

¹ From here on, Lorber writes ‘Kisjona’ and no more ‘Kisjonah’.

gave him a true testimony.

[17] We remained for more than 1 hour on the spot where I had awakened Philopold out of his dream. He continuously came with new questions to ask Me, on which I gladly answered him. And we would have stayed longer on that spot if friend Kisjona, who received the message from the Greeks of My coming, would not have hurried to Me with open arms with a couple of his friends.

[18] It is obvious that I made Kisjona very happy with that unexpected visit, and so it is not necessary to give a more detailed description of it. In short, we left that spot and went very cheerfully and happy to the big house of our friend, while it was still more than 1 hour before sunset, and Kisjona ordered his servants immediately to take care of an excellent evening meal.

[19] During that time, also the mother of My body lived in Kis, together with Joel, a son of Joseph, in a house that Kisjona arranged for her. And Kisjona asked Me if he had to inform her of My presence.

[20] But I said to him: “Just leave it out for the moment, for I Myself will go to her tonight, with you and with John and James, and will bring her, together with her friends to this place for the evening meal. But for the time being let them bring us some bread and wine, because My disciples are already hungry and thirsty.”

[21] This was done immediately and we refreshed ourselves while I related many of My trips and its results.

[22] Kisjona, his friend and also his children were greatly surprised about what My trips had accomplished.

[23] **Our Philopold** said continuously: “Yes, great is the Lord, the Lion of Judah, and full of glory is His name. Only the Lord can do such things. The truth from the Heavens from Your mouth, proclaimed to the people and proven by miracles that are only possible to God, may well convert the stones and make them seeing.”

[24] They all praised Philopold’s statement, and **Kisjona** said to My disciples, who were also greatly praising the words of Philopold: “Yes, dear friends, Philopold is the teacher of us all.

He made many things clear to us, which seemed a mystery to us, despite all the things we have heard and seen ourselves. That is why he is also our most beloved and most honored friend, and will always be.”

[25] **I** said: “That is also why I gave him to you and enlightened him, and you will do well if, in My name, you will keep this wise man from Kane in Samaria. In the future he will still be able to perform greater things than up to now.”

[26] **In the course of these conversations, Peter said to Me:** “Lord, when we left Kana today, You first have blessed the Persians and also the innkeeper and his whole house in word and deed, but, at least outwardly, You seemed to have forgotten the 4 Indo-Jews, although they made a long trip because of You.”

[27] **I** said: “How does that concern you? When we left, they were not present, since they went away to visit the synagogue. But still, I excellently provided for them. They left Kana today after the midday meal and will arrive here in 1 hour, and then your supposed carelessness can still be corrected. Therefore, you can be completely at ease. Besides, regarding their return, they were more than enough provided with everything by the innkeeper and by the Persians. And all this through My hidden care, and that is more valuable than an outer goodbye.”

[28] Peter was satisfied with that, and they all rejoiced that they also could see that family in Kis, speak to them and treat them well.

[29] **Kisjona** even immediately wanted to send messengers to them and asked Me to describe them and how they looked like. This I also told him, together with the remark that they would come on 4 mules that were given to them by the innkeeper to make their trip home easier.

[30] **With that description, Kisjona** sent 2 messengers on the way that I indicated to him, in order to meet them, together with the instruction that they would not accept any payment of toll money from that family. Immediately the messengers went on the indicated road to meet the 4, who, after 1 hour arrived safe and

sound in Kis, about which Kisjona, Philopold, My disciples and also all the other friends of Kisjona were very glad.

83. THE COUNTRY OF THE INDO-JEWS



THE 4 came to us in the big hall, and when they saw Me, they immediately fell at My feet from joy and love, and thanked Me with tears in their eyes for all the great blessings and good deeds that My love had given to them. But I told them to stand up and to take place at our table and refresh themselves with bread and wine, which they also did.

[2] Kisjona and our Philopold inquired immediately about their homeland, and asked how one could go there.

[3] **The man** said very friendly: “Our country is very far away from here and you would search for it in vain, because before you can reach those very high mountains you must cross a lot of other high mountains because of the 4 big rivers that you have to leave behind you in order to reach those mountains which really surround our big country on all sides, so much so that not even an eagle can go over the mountain tops that are sticking out above all the clouds. You also could come closer to the mountains of our country by passing through the lowlands if there were no rivers, over which men have still not build bridges, and namely not over the 3 last ones. Only the Euphrates has a kind of bridge at the place where it is still narrow, but the other rivers will probably not have any. At least, we do not know any – also because we never explored the course of the rivers too far. Then when you come to such river, you should follow it for a long time, almost until its source in order to cross over. And this, *my* friends, makes the way to our country difficult and long and it takes a lot of time.

[4] And if you finally, after much trouble and discomfort, come close to our country, then you still can wander around for 1 year, or still much longer, while you still cannot find an entrance. Only Jehovah knows this, and the one to whom the Spirit of Jehovah wants to reveal it. And so, no one was able to discover us until

now, no matter how many people there may be on the big Earth. And this is thanks to the protection of Jehovah. However, if we want, we ourselves can go to the people who live in the lowlands to also now and then barter with them. But they cannot come to us, except if we ourselves would take them to us, which we are not doing and will also never do.

[5] And so, our country is also a secret on Earth, and You, o Lord and Master, will also mercifully protect it from now on, in such a way that it will never be discovered by any one of all the godless enemies. And we will never waver in our faithfulness from ancient times.”

[6] **I** said: “Keep My love, then this will keep you and your country. But so that you will also know in what kind of country you live, I will tell you. So listen to Me.

[7] Look, your country is the old Eden where Adam and Eve were created, but who had to leave it after the sin, and until you came there, it was never discovered or inhabited by a human being. And so it will also not be discovered in the future by anyone if you will persevere in My love.”

[8] After My explanation, there was a real rejoicing, and the 4 began to cry from sheer joy.

[9] But I calmed them down and said: “Do not imagine anything because of that, because soil is soil, and land remains land. From now on, there will be no more earthly Eden, but only an Eden in the heart of man. Therefore, all of you, strife only to that, and protect it against the enemy whose name is ‘worldly mentality’, for this is the source of all vices and the decline of all human happiness.”

[10] They all agreed with Me and praised the wisdom of God in Me.

84. THE JOYFUL MEAL WITH KISJONA



THEN I said to Kisjona: “Friend, now we will go to Mary. Let those who I mentioned earlier go with us.

[2] We stood up and went to Mary.

[3] When we came to her, she was very glad. However, she could not go around it to mention her need about the great distress and the big worries that she often had to endure because of Me.

[4] I comforted her and said: “If you know already since My conception why I have come in the flesh through your body into this world, then how can you still worry if I do the will of the Father who is in Heaven? But come with us now, with all those who are with you. In the house of our friend you will hear many things about what I have done amongst the people.”

[5] Then Maria stood up, together with her friends and Joel, and she followed Me, escorted by James and John to whom she asked all kinds of things on the way, which gave her the most comforting information.

[6] Now we came into the house of Kisjona, in which meanwhile the big dining hall, and in it the big table, were royally decorated, and they all were surprised that the personnel of Kisjona were able to do this in such a short time.

[7] **Mary** was especially pleased with that, and she asked Me: “Son, how do You like this *special* attention of our dear friend Kisjona?”

[8] I said: “I only feel great joy about his heart, which is pure, good and noble, but the glitter of gold, silver and precious stones has no value for Me. But because it pleases this friend to honor Me in this way, his joy should also not be taken away from him.”

[9] Mary completely agreed with these words of Mine. The food and the wine were already waiting for us on the table, and so we sat down in a good order at the table and we ate and drank.

[10] Mary was sitting at My right hand and Joel at My left. Directly at the right side of Mary sat Kisjona, Philopold, James and John, and on My left the 4 Indo-Jews. After them sat the

friends of Kisjona and the friends of Mary, and then all My disciples. And so, as already said, the big table was set in the best of order.

[11] First there were the well prepared noble fishes from the Lake of Galilee of which I ate a few, as well as Mary, who was experienced in preparing fish herself and was extremely praising the good preparation of the fishes. But there were also some fried chicken, 2 fat lambs and a complete calf, well prepared set on the table, and fruit of the very best kind, which the disciples and also the other guests were really enjoying. But I only choose the fishes, although Mary thought that I should taste a bit of everything.

[12] But I said: “Everyone should eat whatever his stomach needs. I satiated Myself with the fishes, and My body does not need more in this world. But do not pay attention to Me, and eat whatever is tasteful to you.”

[13] Then Mary took again a fish with Me and ate it with bread and some wine. The 4 strangers really enjoyed the taste of everything, as well as My disciples. Only the disciples of John who traveled with Me did the same as I.

[14] Finally Kisjona himself said to Me: “Lord and Master, why do You actually not take also some of the other food? You know that everything I have is fresh, clean and excellently prepared.”

[15] I said: “My dear friend, do not worry about Me. It is sufficient that I take care of all of you and watch. Be glad now, since I am still walking visibly among you. Soon the time will come that I will only be in your midst in the spirit of faith and love, and then you will no more be that cheerful and happy on this Earth and you will have to endure many things because of My name. Now the whole of God’s Kingdom is in Me and with you, but then you will have to seek, find and keep it within yourselves. So be happy and cheerful. I eat only fishes now because they are most of all similar to present mankind as far as their discernment is concerned. In Me they must come to life, to the spiritual life and its light.”

[16] **One of the friends of Kisjona** said: “But Lord and Master,

how can the fishes be compared to men? I suppose that a fish is and remains the dumbest of all animals. A worm that crawls around on the ground seems already to have more intelligence than the most noble fish.”

[17] **I** said: “Although you are not completely wrong in this, but still, men are for the very greatest part now still dumber than the fishes in the water.

[18] If you want to have an abundant catch now, then you will fish at night in the light of torches. From this you can conclude – at least in natural respect – that fishes certainly do not shun the light since they gather in great quantities on the spot where they perceive a light.

[19] I am the Light of all light and I am the Life of all life. But look now at the people, then you will be surprised about the little number of those who are swimming towards Me with faith and love, in the water of their worldly mentality and let them be captured by Me into the Kingdom of God. That is why I compare only those few people with fish – My favorite dish – who recognize Me as the true Light of the world and as the Sun of Heaven, swimming towards Me and let them be captured for the eternal life. Do you understand this image?”

[20] **The friend** said: “Yes, Lord and Master, now I do understand it, and You always do things according to Your unchangeable order, which is also a gospel for everyone who has more the possibility to observe You than we have. But still, a strong awakened spirit is surely needed to understand such gospel.”

[21] **I** said: “Everything can easily and surely be accomplished if the right means are at hand, and which are also used in the right way. So also, man can quick and easy completely awaken the spirit within him if he has the right means for it, and which he will also use in the right way. And that right way is the true, pure and active love for God and thus also for fellowman.

[22] However, he who wants to love God, must first believe that there is a God who exists, who, since He Himself is completely Love, is the eternal initial foundation of all things in the whole

of infinity.

[23] How can man come to such belief? The surest way is by means of the revelations, by listening to God's word and by knowing the will of the eternal Love.

[24] If man wants to know that will, he must completely make his will subordinate to the will of the eternal love and highest wisdom in God and must permit to be digested by God' will as a well prepared meal, just like these fishes. Then he will be completely permeated by God's Spirit, and from that he will appear as a new created being for eternal life.

[25] Whoever accomplishes that to himself, awakens in him, by using the right means in the right way, the spirit of life and wisdom, and he will then also find a well understandable gospel in the nature of the Earth and of all creatures on it, as well as in the moon, the sun and the stars.

[26] If you friend, want to be completely awakened in the spirit, then follow My advice. Then soon everything that seems now still worrying and at some places doubtful to you, will become clear."

[27] Then **Mary** said: "My son, what a great teaching have You already given to the people in foreign parts, but You still have thought little about us home people here."

[28] **I** said: "Mary, was I not amongst you home people since My childhood until My 30th year? Did I not teach you very often about Me, also confirming My words with all kinds of signs? Did I also not come to Nazareth later, and did I not teach there and perform signs? But what did the blind home people there in and around Nazareth say?"

[29] Look, they said: 'From where does He have such wisdom? Surely, that is the son of the carpenter whom we know. How can a prophet come from him?'

[30] And see, because this is how the home people here thought about Me, judging Me and did also not believe Me, I also did not stay here with the home people, but I went to the foreign parts. For this is what I said at that time, and am still saying it again: a prophet is never less appreciated than in his homeland, and least of

all in the place where he spent his childhood.

[31] But among those of the home people who believed in Me, they are still with Me, and will also stay with Me everywhere. But in Nazareth I Myself will no more teach or perform signs. My disciples will do that later in My name.

[32] However, for you, I have already taken care, for the time and for eternity. When I will return from where I came, I will prepare a home for you all, where eternally you will no more be tormented by distress or unnecessary worries, because where I will be, there you also will be with Me – if you did not let yourselves be caught by the world.”

[33] On these words of Mine, Mary did not say anything anymore, but she kept them in her heart.

85. TEMPLE SERVANTS FROM JERUSALEM IN SEARCH OF THE LORD



WHEN a servant came into the hall and said to Kisjona: “A few temple servants from Jerusalem have arrived here and they ask for accommodation. What must we do?”

[2] When our **Kisjona** heard this, he was unwilling and said: “Ah, you are never at peace, day nor night, because of those people who are extremely disturbing to me. They have nothing else to do except to travel from one place to another to annoy people with their pride, overconfidence and by their insatiable greed, often in an unbearable manner. Lord and Master, do You not have a terrible windstorm that can chase these annoying guests to another place?”

[3] I said: “Do not worry about those 5 temple servants, and you can just accommodate them. If they want to come here to us, then do not refuse them, for I, and we all, are not afraid of them. Give them what they will ask you, so that they will have no reason to speak evil of us. They do not know Me, and we soon will discuss a few things with them about Me. They must hear the truth.”

[4] When Kisjona heard what I said, he became more willing and

told the servant to let them in, give them accommodation and serve them according to their wish.

[5] Then the servant went outside and said to them what his lord told him.

[6] Hearing that, the temple servants became grumpy and asked the servant what kind of important thing the innkeeper had to do in his house to forget what he owed to the priests of God.

[7] **The servant** said: “There are already a considerable number of guests in the inn, among whom are Greeks, and the innkeeper must give honor to those who came first, and he cannot wait for those he does not know if they will come. In short, since the innkeeper is a Roman citizen he does not make any difference between the guests. He who does not like that, can look for another inn. But if you want to stay here, you will be reasonably served according to your needs.”

[8] **Then a Pharisee** said very grumpy: “Well, well, sympathizer of Romans and servant of your Roman lord of a tollhouse-inn, just bring us to the big guestroom.”

[9] Then the servant brought them to us in the big guest room, where a table was set for them at the other side of the room.

[10] When they came into the guestroom, Kisjona stood up anyway, greeted them and brought them to the table that was set for them.

[11] After they were seated they asked our friend who we actually were.

[12] **Kisjona** said: “I am doing the Roman police work here. It is sufficient for me to know the guests, and regarding the Romans I must guarantee their honesty. But if you wish to get acquainted with these good guests of mine, then direct yourselves to them.”

[13] When the temple servants heard that kind of answer from Kisjona, they did not ask anything anymore and let them give bread, wine and fishes, for they were already hungry and thirsty because they traveled on a Sabbath, and since sunrise they did not eat or drink anything because of the people. At home however, the New Moon Sabbath would not have worried them at all.

[14] **Here Mary said to Me with a certain worry:** “My beloved son Jesus, I hope that those greatest enemies of Yours will not recognize You, for in Nazareth I had to endure many evil words and judgments from the local chief because of You, and I especially came to this lonely place to be left alone by the chief and his followers. These over there certainly travel in our country to inquire information about You and Your works. 2 of them seem very familiar to me, and I have seen them in Nazareth a few times because of You.”

[15] **I said:** “Do not worry at all whether they will personally recognize Me or not. This kind will only recognize Me in spirit when I will carry out a judgment over them. But then their recognition will come too late and will bring about their complete downfall. But let us now also eat and drink, for we still have many fishes, bread and wine.”

[16] **With this, Mary was reassured again and took some more food and drink.**

[17] **When the temple servants had filled their thick bellies, the 2 Pharisees left their table and came very insolently to us.**

[18] **One of them, who was a chief and also scribe, said to us:** “You surely will approve that we, servants of God, have come to you according to the old custom, in order to hear some news from you. Everyone of you can of course see right away who and what we are, but we also would like to know from where you came and what you have to do and accomplish here.”

[19] **Now I said:** “Although your request to us is extremely arrogant, which puts aside all good manners, we still want to comply with it if you first tell us what has forced you to undertake a trip, even on a New Moon Sabbath, since you would have accounted that as a great, barely forgivable sin to every other Jew if he would not have bought an exemption from you for a great amount of money. What kind of enormous important reason do you have to break the Sabbath? Tell this first to us, then we will also tell you something more about us.”

[20] **The scribe** who was somehow touched *in his feelings*, said:

“Friend, we are priests, and according to the divine decree we also on a Sabbath have the fullest right to act in the name of the temple in Jerusalem, because we ourselves are actually the living law of Moses. Besides, it will not be unknown to you concerning that certain Nazarene, who claims to be the promised Messiah and who thereby persecutes the temple, has established for already some time a new sect, and by His signs He deceives the people, great and small, and turns them away from us. We have again received a report that He performs once here then there, and He teaches, does very exceptional signs, and everywhere He sets the people against the temple. And that is why we had to use the Sabbath, according to the divine decree in the temple, to know where that seducer of the people is staying and what He is doing. Now you know why we undertook a trip also on a Sabbath, and thus you can also tell us now from where you came and what reason you have for your trip. Because you obviously are also travelers, which we can tell from your tanned faces and hands.”

[21] **I said:** “And what must you do with the Nazarene if you find Him somewhere?”

[22] **The scribe said:** “What we must do? First observe Him, then grab Him and then hand Him over to justice.”

[23] **Kisjona said:** “So, and further nothing? Do you actually know that the Nazarene is also a Friend of the Romans, and that also the gentiles believe in Him? Do you know that He heals all sick people by the power of His will, *that He* commands the elements and awakens the dead? If all the people recognize in Him the promised Messiah and love Him and honor Him, then why not you? Are you perhaps wiser than Him and mightier than His will?”

[24] **The scribe said:** “Are you perhaps also already enchanted by that Nazarene?”

[25] **Kisjona said:** “Certainly not me, for I became only wise by Him, because only by Him I came to know the truth and the life. But you are enchanted by your insatiable greed and imperiousness, and you are blind and deaf. That is why you do not recognize the Nazarene, and in your powerlessness you persecute the One who is

all-powerful.

[26] Although He is most patient and tolerant, and He can bear a lot of things from you, but only a very short time span is remaining before His patience with you will have an end. That time will very soon be over, and then, woe to you, stubborn persecutors of the greatest Friend of men. Then judgment will brake loose over you, of which some time ago you have seen the most undeceiving signs at night at the firmament. I, Kisjona, now a Roman, who is not afraid of you, am telling you this very straightly.”

[27] **Then the 2 Pharisees were very surprised, and the scribe said:** “Well now, you may be right. You can easily talk about the value, the dignity and the character of the Nazarene, because you definitely know Him personally and you probably were in contact with Him several times. But we do not know Him at all, and until now we have not been in contact with Him. What we know about Him, we only know through the spies who were sent to Him, and from everywhere the reports are exactly the same about the fact that He always was very hostile regarding the temple. But let us know where we can find Him, then we will speak with Him ourselves, test Him and see what kind of person He is.”

[28] **Kisjona said:** “You lie when you say that you do not know Him personally, for I myself know for sure that He repeatedly taught the people in Jerusalem, and also confirmed His teaching by purely divine signs. At that time, gentiles were converted, but you temple servants picked up stones and wanted to stone Him. If this is so, then how can you say that you do not know him personally?”

[29] **The 2 said:** “We surely heard about it when we came home from Damascus where we had work to do, but that is why we never had the opportunity to know the so famous, but in the temple extremely infamous, Nazarene personally. But because our trips certainly made us more world travelers and more clever compared to all those who are constantly sitting in the temple, the big council in the temple quickly chose us as the most suitable spies to inquire about the Nazarene – in return of a good reward – and to send immediately a report to the temple regarding where He is staying

and His activities. Under these surely difficult circumstances we were sent out already several times by the temple. We even came a few times in Nazareth and knew there His mother and brothers, but the One whom we sought we have not seen until now. So we did not tell an untruth when we said that we do not know Him personally and were never able to be in contact with Him.

[30] So tell us where we can meet, hear and watch Him, then we will be able to tell according to our own experience to what extent the great accusations of the temple against Him are true or false and maliciously invented. We are scribes and know everything that is written in the prophets about the coming Messiah. Therefore, we do not accept of course so easily a new teaching like the people who are mostly inexperienced in the Scripture and who are already very badly spoiled by the gentiles.”

[31] Now I said again: “But whose fault is it that the people are so badly instructed in the Scripture? Look, this is your own fault. You withhold the Word of God from the people, and instead of that you torment them with your rules that the people have to accept as God’s word. Is it then surprising that the people seek and also find protection from you with the gentiles?”

[32] Now if God has fulfilled His promise, and His anointed One teaches now again the pure word and does miracles by its power, like the prophets did, is that against the temple – if the temple would be the way it has to be according to the rules? If you are scribes, then determine for yourselves how far the temple has drawn away from the pure word of God through its actions.

[33] I say to you: the gentiles are now much closer to God’s throne than the temple with its extremely selfish and imperious rules. Where is now the old Ark of the Covenant, where the always green staff of Aaron, where the manna, and where the show breads that are eaten away by the moths already a long time ago?

[34] Although you still show such things to the people and keep long speeches about it, but your inner self tells you aloud: ‘We are deceiving the people and are forced to deceive them, so that it would not rise, overtake us and destroy us.’

[35] Look, this is then also the most important reason why you persecute with glowing zeal the One who is sent into this world by God, and you fear and hate Him even more than death, which will not spare you.”

86. CONVERSATION BETWEEN THE TEMPLE SERVANTS AND THE LORD



HE scribe said: “Friend, how do You know all that?”

[2] **I** said: “You just said that you are very experienced world travelers. But where is it written that one of us is not also a very experienced world traveler? How often did you not show for money the whole institution of the temple to strangers? How could that be kept silent?”

[3] Formerly, only in case of extreme necessity the high priest was allowed to enter into the most holy *place*, and this usually only 2, at the most 4 times a year. And now, for money, the most holy *place* has become a show booth for strangers, and all kinds of business are done in the temple, and great deceit is committed, which is known now by everyone. So how can you be surprised if also one of us knows about it, and that the anointed One of God knows completely clearly about all those profanities and deceits?

[4] Is the temple, which is now criticized from the true mouth of God, still the same as during the time of Salomon? Oh, not at all. The old, sacred house of prayer has become a robber’s den and a murderous pit.

[5] Look, this is the condition of the temple, as everyone knows, and for the anointed One of God it is not at all necessary anymore to speak to the people about your godliness to make the temple suspicious and to downgrade it. And all the better people know about it already for a long time, and they complain bitterly about it to the anointed One of God. If this is the situation, do you perhaps think that He will praise it and reject the people who complain and cry? No, truly not. He, who is the most righteous amongst the righteous, will eternally never do that.

[6] If you would meet that Nazarene whom you hate so much, and He would tell you exactly what I have told you now, then what would you answer Him?"

[7] **The scribe said:** "Yes, Friend, if one has to stay with the truth, then little could be answered in favor of the temple. The only thing that one should nevertheless consider is that not we, nor a lot of us, are those who have changed and deformed the ancient, good and true rules of the temple as they are changed and deformed now, but already for a long time only the leaders, chiefs and the most mighty in the temple. What can we subordinate ones do except to comply with what the temple, of which we live, prescribes us? We have been made young wolves, and must howl together with the old wolves in order not to be torn apart and eaten up by them.

[8] To teach the pure truth and also to act according to it would be the best, the most beautiful and most wonderful among men on Earth. But what can be done if for the sake of the truth, all imaginable persecutions, punishments and even the death on the cross can be inflicted? If the condition is such, then one has to become a persecutor of the truth in order to live, because, without ever having willed it, one has to live in the world.

[9] But God is almighty and also extremely wise. Since the very beginning He has arranged everything well and wisely. Then why did He allow after some time that men, who certainly are His most outstanding created beings, sank now so very deeply from their original purity and dignity?

[10] If the anointed One is so mighty in word, will and action, and all elements obey Him, then with all the might and power that He possesses He must be able to act against the present misbehavior of the temple and destroy it completely."

[11] **I said:** "You are a scribe and you reason about divine things and arrangements even darker than a blind person about the colors that become visible to the eye by the light.

[12] **Of course, man was not placed into this world by his own will but by the one of the almighty God. However, God, as the eternal and most pure Love Himself, is extremely good and wise, and He**

knows why He has created man and has placed him into this world for only a short time for testing and strengthening the free will that was given to him.

[13] In order for man to be aware why he was created and placed into this world, God has faithfully revealed all this to him at all times and gave him also such laws of life to reach without fail the goal that was set before him if he would keep those laws, which is very well possible.

[14] But when did God ever command man to make the greatest possible misuse of his free will and to harm himself by that?

[15] If God has the most perfect, best intentions with man, namely to give him an eternal free, and thus similar to Him, blissful happy life's existence, then why does powerless man resist against this noble intention of God – while he cannot forbid the eternal Lord to create – and this in a manner as if he is lord over the very wise and good will of Jehovah? If you feel in yourself that you must live in this world, then why do you also not feel with a thankful heart why God has placed you in this world, since He faithfully has revealed His will to you?

[16] Now if man feels what kind of evil he has done to himself by his proud stubbornness against the revealed and well known will of God, and if God has come now Himself according to His prediction in the Son of Man in full truth to degenerated mankind to guide and to bring them to the old way of life with all love and the greatest patience – which He proves by his teaching and deeds – then why do you abhor Him and do you not want to let yourselves be helped by Him?

[17] This is certainly not the fault of God, but only of yourself, by your insatiable greed and your truly satanic lust for power – even over God. Yes, if God would be as hard, loveless and fully impatient as you are, He would not only have made a definite end to the temple and its evil servants, but also to this whole Earth. But He suffers your blindness and its resulting wickedness, and admonishes you all to return to the enlightened way of life.

[18] But you do not want that and persist not only in your old vices

of all kind, but you even increase them from day to day, and God Himself, who wants to help you now, you persecute, in a way that can be clearly seen and recognized by everyone. Is God perhaps also to blame if you disgust His eternal love and truth, which you want to punish in your blindness and wickedness?

[19] Yes, yes, by your laws of falsehood you still will nail the eternal truth to the cross. But then the measure of your wickedness and hardness will become full, and then the judgment will come over you and give you the reward that you yourself want to receive from God because of your wickedness, and which He, because of His love, patience and mercy, is still withholding from you until now, because He did not place any soul, not even the one of the wicked high priest, for the sake of destruction into this world.

[20] Look, this is how we all think. Why do you also not think likewise, completely in the true life's order of God?"

[21] **The scribe** did not know anymore what he could object to My words. After a while he said: "Yes, yes, Friend, You certainly are a Galilean by birth, and You seem to be very impressed with the famous Nazarene. You are of course completely right, but what can we do, we who are dependent on all kinds of worldly laws?"

[22] If we leave the temple, we will have to search everywhere for our necessary livelihood just like the birds, and if we stay in the temple we must tolerate its rules and precepts, and we must, at least for the sake of appearances, do what we are commanded to do. The prophets have certainly always done the will of God, which they knew well, but their life in this world was certainly not commendable, and besides, their life on this Earth mostly ended with all kinds of hard persecutions.

[23] If *the life of man*, even under the happiest life's conditions, is already many times worse than a bird in the sky, then what will this earthly happiness look like of those people who are despised and persecuted by the people of the world?"

[24] **I** said: "It always looks extremely good with the life's happiness of those who are enthusiastic about God, for they know in themselves why they were placed into this world. And if they

suffer, they know very clearly why. Also, they are not afraid for the death of the body because they already have, feel and see in all clearness the eternal life of the soul in themselves, and in this life, also the power and the might of the Spirit of God in them by which they possess eternal life and divine wisdom.

[25] But on the other hand, what has man in him who guzzles in all worldly pleasures? About what is he finally aware? Of death, after which no life wants to appear to him. And finally despair is his lot. What actually means the earthly suffering of a person who is enthusiastic about God compared to his happy separation from this world, and what means the very short good life of a worldly person compared to his unhappy separation from this world? Now compare yourself who of those 2 people in the world is the happiest.

[26] What does man, who possesses the wisdom from God, actually lose, when he is despised by the blind worldly fools, and is persecuted in one way or another, and is finally even killed? He does not only lose anything, but gains by it, because by his patience, he more and more will be closely connected with the Spirit of God, and thus he also becomes more truthfully aware in himself of the blissful, eternal life.

[27] But what do the worldly people gain who despise and persecute the wise person who received his wisdom from God? Eternal death and its judgment. If the temple cannot offer you anything better than the satisfaction of your body – if you serve its evil purposes – then you are truly very pitiful people, and a blind beggar in the street is better off than you.”

[28] When the 2 heard this from Me, they were even more surprised, and none of the 2 knew now what to answer Me.

[29] **The scribe** praised My intelligence, told me that I was right in everything and said finally to Me: “Friend, I will keep a counsel tonight with the others, and the result of that will certainly be that we will entirely give up the persecution of the Nazarene, but we will nevertheless try to personally make acquaintance with Him. And what He will advice us, we will do. Because from You we

have now tasted His truly divine wisdom and we are now already completely different people. What kind of impression will He then make upon us. Tomorrow we will continue this.”

[30] Then the 2 said good-bye, returned to their table and went soon to rest. We stayed however well over 1 hour awake and talked with each other about these My persecutors. And Kisjona and Maria were very glad that these temple servants did not recognize Me, and that they changed their mind.

[31] When the Pharisees came into their dormitory they very seriously deliberated as to what they should do in the future. And they all agreed that they should meet Me somewhere and should let them be advised by Me as to what direction their life had to take in the future.

[32] Now we also went to rest, but not in a separate bedroom – with the exception of Mary for whom Kisjona had taken special care – but as it was often the case, we stayed at our table, which was of course cleared first.

87. THE LORD CALLS THE 3 ARCHANGELS MICHAEL, GABRIEL AND RAPHAEL



EARLY in the morning, that was very pure, we stood up from our good resting chairs and went outside, more precisely to the nearby shore of the lake. Kisjona, Philopold and also the 4 Indo-Jews were with us. Mary remained still in the house to rest, and, accompanied by Joel, she came only when the sun had almost risen.

[2] On such occasion I said: “Since I will physically not walk on this place anymore at this time *of My earthly life*, you will see with your eyes being fulfilled what is written about Me: ‘And you will see angels ascending and descending between Heaven and Earth, and they will serve Him.’

[3] My disciples have seen this already often, but here I most of all let it happen for the sake of the 4 Indo-Jews.

[4] First I called in the spirit Michael, who as a clear lightning

descended out of the visible Heaven to the Earth, so that they all were very frightened. Michael stood before Me in all his majesty, shining stronger than the sun, and nobody except Me could bear the glow of his light.

[5] I said to him: “John, cover yourself with a shadow, so that My friends can see you, recognize and speak to you.”

[6] Then he covered himself with a shadow, and full of love and respect he stood before Me and said (**Michael**): “Look, brothers, this is the Lamb who takes away from you the sin of the world, and prepares for you the way to eternal life. Believe in Him and love Him above all, for He is the very Eternal Beginning and the very Eternal End, the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, besides Him there is no God.”

[7] When the angel had spoken out these words with a very lovely voice, he bowed deep before Me and highly praised My name.

[8] Then also all the others fell down before Me and glorified and praised Me just like the angel.

[9] I commanded them all to stand up and said to them: “Be natural, for I am a Man now just like you, and by your faith in Me and by your love for Me I am in you, just like you are in Me. Therefore, be natural.”

[10] Then they all stood up again, and John went to his former disciples and spoke with them about things that would happen after Me, to the Jews and to the people of the Earth, because of their unbelief, and he stayed the whole day with us in the visible human form of John who was well recognized by all.

[11] After him I called the archangel Gabriel. He came immediately, just like Michael-John, but covered himself directly with a shadow, gave Me the honor and went directly to Mary and spoke with her about his mission with her, and she became filled with humble happiness and blissfulness. Then Gabriel, who appeared in the form and person of the forefather Jared, went also to My disciples and spoke with them about the first Adamic times

and about the revelations of that time to the children of the height¹ and also to the children of the world. And also he stayed visibly with us until the evening.

[12] After him I called Raphael. Also he appeared directly in the same manner as the first 2, covered himself with a shadow, gave Me the honor and went to the 4 Indo-Jews in the form and person of Enoch, and spoke very friendly with them about Me, and that he was the one who, on My command, had freed them from the Babylonian captivity and brought them to the land, which, with the exception of Adam and Eve, was not inhabited before by a human being.

[13] **The little daughter** was very surprised about the figure of Raphael and said: “Oh, lovely messenger from the lightened heights of God, I have seen and also spoken to you oftentimes in my dreams, but when I wanted to talk about it to my parents they did not want to believe it and called me a fantasy dreamer. But now they can see you in person with their eyes, and will now surely believe that I have seen the full, light truth in my dreams.”

[14] And the parents praised Me because I had given them such a devout daughter.

[15] This event of the arrival of the 3 angels lasted for about 1 hour.

[16] **Kisjona** who was almost completely confused from joy, asked Me: “O Lord and Master, how many of such spirits are actually living in Your Heavens?”

[17] **I** said to him: “O My dear friend, the number of such spirits in My Kingdom is endless, for what would a limited number be for an eternal, and, in His Spirit of love and wisdom, infinite God? Look on a clear night at the stars that are numberless for you – you already know what they are. Also on these, men are procreated and born. And out of them, also spirits are awakened for an eternal life and eternal activity. If you yourself will be like a perfected spirit in My Kingdom, you will see it all yourself, and because of that, your

¹ See ‘The Household of God’ - volumes I, II and III.

happiness will nevermore have an end.

[18] I say to you: no eye has ever seen, no ear has heard and no sense organ has felt what is awaiting in Heaven for those who love God above all and keep His commandments.

[19] Although in man's life, from his birth until the falling away of his body, he is afflicted with a lot of fatal incidents and all kinds of distress, but if he lives according to the known order of God, and by that receives in himself, already on this Earth, the clear awareness of life of what is waiting for him in the other, true life, he will suffer with all patience and perseverance all those ever so bitter trials that are only allowed to him to awaken the Spirit of God in his soul, and he will moreover be very joyful.

[20] Take an example on Me. I know what kind of suffering is shortly waiting for Me on this Earth, but My extremely great love for you people, yes, for My children, softens it for Me. Let also your many sufferings and many sorrows that you, My children, have to endure in this life also be softened by the love for the One who lives in Me, then by that you also will, just like Me, be good-tempered, joyful and have a cheerful mind.

[21] Look, these 3 angel spirits, who will stay with us today until sunset, had to endure many things on this Earth. And now they are extremely happy and they will never in eternity have to suffer again. It is however their greatest happiness if they can give men on this Earth a real service of love in My name, although besides that, they have to command numberless suns and globes in the endless space.

[22] So you also, show love to men already now on this Earth for the sake of My name, then you also will enjoy a great happiness, because there is much more happiness in giving than receiving."

[23] When Kisjona heard this from My mouth he thanked Me for this lesson and promised Me most fervently that above all he would take My words very actively at heart.

[24] Then a servant came out of the house to us at the shore of the lake to inform us that the morning meal was ready.

88. THE OPINION OF THE TEMPLE SERVANTS ABOUT THE 3 ARCHANGELS



ISJONA asked the servant what the temple servants were doing, who arrived late the day before.

[2] **The servant** answered: “They are already waiting in the hall for you and the Lord and Master, and they want to ask you where He is staying. And they also want to ask the Lord and Master Himself, because they still do not know who He is. They took information from us, but they did not receive an answer, and then they did not ask us any further.”

[3] **Kisjona** praised the servant for that, and we went to the morning meal. And also the 3 spirits were with us.

[4] When we entered the hall, the temple servants came to meet us at once, greeted Me and Kisjona, and they immediately wanted to inquire as to where the Nazarene was staying.

[5] **But Kisjona** said: “Now it is time for the morning meal. After that, we will talk about it. But if you will not be too blind and deaf, you surely will be able to conclude from our words where the great Lord and Master is staying.”

[6] **With this**, the temple servants were satisfied. We went to sit down at the table in good order. And now in such a way that Gabriel-Jared came to sit next to Maria, Michael-John in the midst of his disciples and Raphael-Enoch in the midst of the 4 Indo-Jews. We began to eat and to drink, and again the strangers noticed that the 3 spirits ate 10 times as much as another guest at the table. Most of all, the temple servants, who were carefully watching us from their table, noticed that the 3 apparently young men could eat so many fishes.

[7] One of them could not resist coming to our table and asking Kisjona what kind of young men they were who could eat so much and with such great speed.

[8] **Kisjona** said: “Go and ask it to them yourself. I am only especially glad about their great appetite, because for me it proves that the fishes are well prepared, and also that my wine is pure and

good, as well as my home bread. But as I said: ask more to these dear young men yourself.”

[9] **Then the scribe went to Raphael and asked him which country’s child he was, and if everyone in his homeland were such big eaters.**

[10] **Raphael said:** “Our eating attracted your attention – why did our coming not attract your attention?”

[11] **The scribe said:** “How could it attract our attention? Because you all came into this hall like the others.”

[12] **Raphael said:** “When we arrived, you were on the terrace of the roof and you were looking at the lake when a very bright lightning shot out of the sky to the Earth between the men who stood along the shore, and you thought: ‘Oh, those must be great sinners to God, because God let even a lightning to shoot out of the most clear sky in their midst at an unusual time of the year. Look, with that first lightning, about which you were extremely surprised and which really made you start to think, that young man arrived who is now very friendly sitting there next to a very honorable woman. Then soon a 2nd lightning shot from the sky between the group of your supposed great sinners. Again it did not harm anyone, and you said: ‘God rebukes the sinners.’ And look, with this 2nd lightning arrived that young man who is sitting there between the 7 men, who were his disciples not so long ago. And I arrived with the 3rd lightning.

[13] So our nature is pure fire from the Heavens. However, the fire can eat more than a human being, and thus it should not surprise you too much that we, 3 guests from the Heavens, can eat more than a weak human being of this world.”

[14] **When the scribe heard this from the mouth of Raphael, he did not know what he should answer to that, for he thought that the young man wanted to make fun of him, because he could not believe what Raphael told him. However, then he looked more closely to the 3, went again to his followers and told them what he heard from the 3 young men.**

[15] **One of them said:** “We will wait until the friendly company

of Kisjona has finished the morning meal, then we will seriously ask where the famous Nazarene is staying. If they want to tell us that, we will immediately travel to that place where He can be found, and then we will turn our back to these half Romans, for whom we are a thorn in the flesh¹.”

[16] **But another said:** “It is true that you are more learned in the Scripture than one of us, but I believe that with my sharp sight I have discovered more than you. I am of the opinion that the famous Nazarene is in that group.

[17] And one of those 3 young men looks very well like that preacher in the desert, who, as they say, was beheaded about 2 years ago in the prison of Herod. This we can of course not know so well in time and fact because we were in Damascus at that time. But before we went to that city, I had seen him in the little desert at the Jordan, where he taught, and those who were converted to him he baptized with the water of the river, and he gave a new name to those who were baptized by him.

[18] Of course he looked older at that time and he was very thin. But it is also possible that he was not beheaded – as the rumor goes – and Herod instead had beheaded a slave who looked somewhat like that baptizer, to do the will of Herodias, and set him free with the order to go with his disciples in strange clothing to the gentiles. There he must have given up his severe life, took better food and looks here now very young.

[19] But if he is there, then the Nazarene will also not be far away from Him, for he preached all the time about the complete coming of the Messiah. And with his truly gentile appetite he surely could look a few years younger now compared to what he looked like in the desert when he did not eat anything else than grasshoppers with wild honey.”

[20] **The scribe said to the speaker:** “Your observation is really very remarkable, but then what do you think about the 3 flashes of lightning which we all saw from the terrace on the roof shooting

¹ Literally: ‘a thorn in the eye’.

down from the sky, precisely into that group that was then along the shore and which is now enjoying the morning meal, precisely composed of 3 more young men? We did not see anyone joining that group, except at the end only one house servant who called the group for the morning meal. Also yesterday we did not see any of these 3 young men. From where did they come to the group?"

[21] **The speaker said:** "They could have joined them this early morning."

[22] **The scribe said:** "If that would be the case, then our servants, who were on guard, would have reported this to us, because according to our instructions they had to watch closely who was coming, and from which direction, and who went outside of the house, with who, and to where. But our servants could not tell us if someone had arrived early in the morning. They also did not notice anyone early in the morning, namely none of the 3 young men, coming out of the house and see them going with the group to the shore of the lake. But they did see almost 1 hour later the woman with a man and, as already stated, the last one was the house servant, going to the group. And so it is really the question from where the 3 young men had come."

[23] **The speaker, who wanted to consider the 3 young men as natural human beings, said:** "Is it not possible that the 3 young men had already spent the night at the shore and then were only met there and taken up by the group in the morning?"

[24] **Then the scribe said again:** "Then our servants would have noticed something and reported it to us. For as you know, also 3 of our servants watched the shore until this group left the house early in the morning, going to the shore where our servants still met them, which we had seen from the terrace of the roof with our own eyes. So no matter how we think and talk, those 3 young men, who eat so much, are in any case an extraordinary and straight miraculous appearance. For I am certainly not a man who lightly believes in miracles, but those 3, who are now present in that somewhat mysterious company, seem unmistakably a miracle to me. Who and what is behind them is of course completely another

question. After the meal we surely will discover it.”

[25] With these words of the scribe, also the others agreed, and they waited with great desire for the end of our morning meal which also happened soon.

89. THE LORD EXPLAINS THE 13TH CHAPTER OF EZEKIEL



WHEN we left the table **the scribe** came immediately to us and said to Me: “Wise Friend, think about what You have promised me yesterday evening.”

[2] I said: “You are on the right way, but still, it is a wonder that you are still so blind while you have received already so much light. Although yesterday evening you halfway began to believe the truth about what I told you concerning the Nazarene, but you and your companions still think in your heart: ‘No matter what, we want to meet the Nazarene once personally and then seriously examine Him. If we will find in Him what we have heard in Kis about Him, then we will choose His side, but if we will not find that completely so, then according to our assignment we will put our hands on Him right away and bring Him to justice.’”

[3] Therefore, you belong to those false prophets, together with the high priest and with all your false prophets like the elders, scribes, Pharisees and Levites in Jerusalem and also in the synagogues everywhere in the whole of the Jewish land, about whom the Lord says by the prophet Ezekiel:

[4] ‘Child of men, prophesy against the prophets of Israel and speak to those who prophesy from their own heart and understanding: Hear the word of the Lord. This is what the Lord Lord says: Woe to the foolish prophets who follow their own spirit without ever having had a vision or heard a call.

[5] O Israel, the prophets to whom you adhere are as foxes in the desert. They do not come out of their holes (out of fear to be captured) and they also do not line up as a barrier around the (threatened) house of Israel, and they are not in the battle on the

day of the Lord (time of trial of the true faith). Their so-called visions are nothing and their prophecies are only lies. Yes, they say very boldly: ‘The lord has said it’, and still, they know very clearly in themselves that He has never called nor sent them, and they only strive with furious efforts to keep their things (for their worldly well being).

[6] (Say, all of you false prophets:) Is it not so, that your so-called visions are nothing and that your prophecies are only lies? And still you say to the people: ‘The Lord has said it’ while I have never spoken to you, as you very well know.

[7] That is why the Lord says further: Because you proclaim things to the people that do not result in anything, and prophecy lies to the people, I will come Myself to you (to reveal your tricks to the people), says the Lord. And My hand will come over those prophets who proclaim things that do not result in anything and prophecy lies. They will not be at the assembly of My people and will not be written down in the number of the house of Israel, nor come into the land Israel. And you will experience that I am the Lord Lord, (and that is why My hand will come over them) because they deceive My people and say to them: ‘Peace (be with you)’, while there is no peace.

[8] If the people will still (in My name) build a wall, they come and whitewash it with their loose chalk (outer appearance of piousness for the sake of their earthly gain). Say to those who whitewash with their loose chalk: your white chalk will soon fall off the wall, because there will be pouring rain, and heavy hail will come down, by which the white chalk will fall off, and a mighty whirlwind will break it loose. (With ‘pouring rain’ the pure Word of God should be understood – with ‘heavy hail’ its firm truth, with ‘mighty whirlwind’ the might of the truth). See, together with the white chalk, also the decayed wall will fall down. Then what does it mean when they will say to you: ‘Where is now that which you have whitewashed?’

[9] But this is what the Lord Lord says: In a whirlwind I will let fall down everything (that is false) into ruin in My wrath, send a

pouring rain in My anger, and heavy hail in My wrath. These will overturn everything. In this manner I will overturn the wall, which you have whitewashed with loose chalk, and throw it down to the ground, and when it will lie smashed on the ground, its false foundation will be seen, and by that its false prophets will be destroyed and *they will* experience that I am the Lord. In this way I will let loose My wrath on the wall and on those who have whitewashed it with loose chalk, and I will say to you: There is no more wall here, or anyone who is whitewashing it. These are the prophets of Israel who prophesy in Jerusalem and proclaim peace, while there is no peace (among themselves), says the Lord Lord.

[10] And you, child of men (Ezekiel), turn your face also against the daughters of your people, who also prophesy in their heart. And prophesy against them and say: ‘This is what the Lord Lord says: Woe unto you who make cushions for the people to put under their arms and pillows to put under their heads, both for young and old, in order to catch their souls. And when you caught the souls among My people, you promise them the eternal life. In this way you profane Me among the people for a handful of barley and a piece of bread, because you condemn to death instead of to life those souls who should not die. And those souls who should not live anyway (because of their godless way of life) you condemn to life by your lies among My people who like to hear lies.

[11] Therefore, this is what the Lord Lord says: I will attack your cushions (like a lion), by which you catch the souls and falsely ensnare them. I will tear them away from your arms, and free the souls whom you falsely want to ensnare and *whom you* have captured for death. Likewise I will tear up your pillows and save My people from your hands, in such a way that you will no more capture them. And so you will experience that I am the Lord. I want to do it and will do it, because you falsely sadden the hearts of the righteous whom I Myself have never saddened. And instead of that you strengthen the hands of the godless, so that they will not repent of their evil nature and would come to life by that. Therefore, you will never more proclaim useless teachings or

prophecy. Thus I will pull My people out of your hands, and you will experience that I alone am the Lord.’

[12] Look, My friend, this is how the Lord has spoken by the mouth of the prophet to the false prophets. And what He has said is now completely being fulfilled before your eyes. And who the false prophets are in this time, worse than ever before, I do not have to tell you again, because I have described them to you more than enough.

[13] ‘But’, you are asking yourself, ‘then who are those daughters of Israel who also prophesy falsely and make cushions under the arms and pillows under the head for the people?’ These are the rules that you made, which you provide now not only with barley and bread, but abundantly with all imaginable treasures.

[14] So that the people should not have to keep the laws of live among each other themselves, you have made it easier for them by your rules by lying to them, *saying* that you had visions and that the Lord Lord revealed to you that the people should rather bring you great offerings and that this was much more pleasing to God than to keep uneasy laws yourself. And the people themselves, who was made blind by you, and who anyway prefer to be lazy than to be active themselves, gladly believed that.

[15] By that you have turned away the people of God and thus also from the life of the souls out of Him, and blocked the doors to the Kingdom of God, so that no human being would attain anymore to the eternal life of his soul.

[16] Or do you perhaps have no rules according to which a person can buy himself completely free from keeping God’s commandments through rich offerings – namely brought to the temple – for a certain number of years for the future? Then he can lie, steal, rob, kill, commit harlotry, adultery and violate the Sabbath as much as he wants and can, without committing a sin.

[17] Is this then not a miserable and very loose layer of white chalk to the wall that was built by God for the protection of His people by which the wall finally became useless itself and has to be brought down now, together with the chalk, and must be

build again?

[18] Can such teachings and false prophecies of yours not be compared to those daughters who prophesy from their evil heart and say: 'Here you have soft cushions as a comfortable support for your arms, with which you can rest well, and moreover soft pillows for your head, so that you can sleep without worries, instead of thinking and searching with difficulty what is right in the eyes of God and men according to those difficult laws?'

[19] Do you think that God would have let it happen to His people to be dominated by the gentiles if they had not become godless by totally false prophecies and teachings and rules, in such a way that they would have destroyed themselves completely unto the last human being already a long time ago if the gentiles would not have prevented it with their strict and clever laws of the state?

[20] But God has seen the great misery of His poor people who here and there did still not completely forget about Him, and *He* brought the gentiles in the Promised Land to protect the people. Otherwise they would have fallen completely a victim to your selfish, evil arbitrariness.

[21] How can you say to the people that God is much too holy and exalted to be concerned about the ways of the people, and that He therefore only reveals His will to the highest arch-angels, and then again only to you by means of all kinds of visions and inner prophecies? And in this manner the people can only hear His will from you as prophets who were appointed by God.

[22] I say to you: you became as rotten as the cedars on the mountain Zion. Therefore the axe is laid at the root. You will be cut down and be thrown into the fire of My anger and wrath and be burned to ashes, says the Lord Lord, who now wants to and will save His people.

[23] However, what the Lord is doing now out of His very own power, that He will always do when an institution of Pharisees will be developed in the same manner as it was developed in Jerusalem.

[24] How many times did God not give warnings to Jerusalem by

the mouth of the true prophets? But what did the temple servants do? Instead of being concerned about it, they have stoned and strangled the prophets, and they declared to the people that those prophets who speak against the temple are messengers of the devil of devils and therefore have to be removed from the Earth.

[25] And in this way you have killed a lot of prophets up to Zechariah, and the latest also John by your intervention. And their innocent blood that was spilled will come as a punishment over you and your children until the end of times.

[26] You will be scattered as chaff to all parts of the world. You will no more be a nation, and as subordinate slaves you will have to serve the gentiles, to whom the light is given, which will be taken away from you. And as the Jews were once the most important people on Earth, so they soon will be the least and most despised. Because with the many prophets, whose graves they are now also whitewashing with their loose chalk for the sake of the people, they still did not kill enough, they also want to do it now to the Lord Himself, capture Him and kill Him. The Lord will also let that happen. However, not for the salvation of the false prophets but for their judgment. And so, He Himself will be the mighty whirlwind that will tear them all apart and sling them into all the pools of the Earth.

[27] And what the Lord will do with the Pharisees, He will also do with every institution of Pharisees that in a similar way as with you will develop somewhere on the whole Earth.

[28] Now I have spoken enough, and you can speak now and say how you have liked the taste of the truth.”

[29] **Then the scribe** said: “My very truthful and wise Friend, I and also all my companions and servants can absolutely not say that You are wrong, for this is now literally the situation with the temple as You have explained it to us now. But what can we do against it? Let come over the temple what the prophet Ezekiel has prophesied. But although we were sent out by the temple for that reason, we will nevermore put our hands on the anointed of God, for we very well have come to know Him now from Your mouth.

We want to completely abandon our worldly dignity and follow His teaching, which we can completely and truthfully assure You and all Your companions.

[30] But allow me, poor sinner, to make to You a very simple but nevertheless for us very meaningful remark. And this is the following: Look, in the course of Your true sermon for penance to us, I had more and more the impression, because of Your zeal, that You are either a very important disciple of the One who spoke as Lord Lord to Ezekiel, or that You are that One Yourself for whom we were sent out to search Him. And if it is You, then allow us to change clothes and then to stay with You and follow You.”

[31] **I said:** “If you believe, you may also stay. The result will show you if you have found in Me the right person. But the salvation does not depend on the outer man, but it comes from the spirit of eternal love and truth that lives in man.

[32] **The outer man will leave this Earth as any other man, and will not stay with men, but his spirit will stay until the end of times.**

[33] **If you want to stick to My Spirit, then stay, but if you want to stick to My person, then you may leave again as you have come.”**

[34] **The scribe said:** “Lord Lord and Master in Your Spirit, not to Your person but we only want to stick to Your Spirit, because Your person serves in the first place only Yourself, as this is the case with everyone, but Your Spirit can serve every person who conforms himself to it.”

[35] **I said:** “Then stay and believe. For happy is the one who believes, and lives and acts according to the truth that he has understood.”

90. THE TEMPLE SERVANTS RECEIVE GREEK CLOTHING



THESE words of Mine made the completely converted temple servants extremely happy and cheerful, and they turned now to Kisjona with the request if he maybe could provide them with Greek clothing.

[2] **But Kisjona said:** “Dear friends, this will now be somewhat difficult because we have no tailor in our village. There are *tailors* in Kana, but I suppose you do not want to travel to that place now?”

[3] **I said to Raphael:** “Provide these 7 temple servants and also their servants with Greek clothing, for they must be made strong for the repentance of the Greeks in Africa.”

[4] **When I had said this aloud to Raphael, he went to the temple servant and said:** “That what He wants, who has ordered me to give you new clothing like the Greeks in Africa are wearing, you will receive. For that reason I will go to a town in Egypt, where there are more than enough manufactured clothing for sale, and then you can put them on.”

[5] **The temple servants said:** “O lovely and above all helpful young man, then we will have to wait here for a long time before you will have brought us these clothing completely out of Egypt.”

[6] **Raphael said:** “In an earthly human manner this would indeed be so, but since I am no earthly human being anymore, my thought is here and there, and because I am my thought myself, I am as fast as my thought. And look, I have already accomplished the work for you that the Lord has commissioned me to do. I went there already and am also already here again. Go now to your room and change clothing.”

[7] **The scribe said:** “How could you have been in Egypt, for we did not miss you for one moment? That would surely be a miracle above all miracles.”

[8] **Raphael said:** “For you certainly, but not for me. But go and convince yourself. Only after that, we can talk a little about it.”

[9] Then they went into their room and found there everything what our Raphael had said to them, about which they were extremely amazed.

[10] Then they soon came back to us as Egyptians – for what their clothing is concerned – and also their servants, and they glorified and praised Me. And **the scribe** said to Me: “The fact that You, o Lord and Master, are the One whom all the Jews are expecting, we do not have to believe anymore, for we are fully convinced about it now. But now we also would gladly like to receive an explanation about the 3 young men of whom one of them has provided us in a very miraculous way with Egyptian clothing. For if they are blissful spirits, then how can they have a body that we can see and touch. And if their body is the same as ours, then how can it move so fast in such an inconceivable manner and bring the many clothing for us and our servants from the faraway land of Ham (a son of Noah)?”

[11] **I** said: “My dear friends, have you then not read what is written in the Scripture, namely that in that time angels will ascend and descend and visibly serve Me and men? And look, in this manner, the Scripture is now also being fulfilled before your eyes.

[12] But even if the high counsel of the temple would see that, then they still would not believe it, so that they would become blissful. Therefore, what Ezekiel has prophesied will also come over them.

[13] However, speak about this matter now with the angel who provided you with new clothing. I will go outside now for a while with the innkeeper and his friend Philopold and give Myself in this manner a little rest in My work.”

[14] The temple servants were completely satisfied with that and they joined Raphael immediately who showed and explained many things to them, as he already did before on the Mount of Olives.

[15] Before I left the room with the 2 who were mentioned before, Mary came to Me to ask if she also should go with us.

[16] But I said that she could stay in the hall with the brothers where she would hear and see many things.

[17] And she stayed and had a conversation with the angel Gabriel about the secrets of life of Heaven.

[18] Then also Judas Iscariot came to Me and asked Me how long I would stay in Kis altogether.

[19] **I** said: “7 whole days, and since you asked Me to visit your family, you can already take the road.”

[20] When Judas Iscariot heard Me saying that, he also took the road immediately.

[21] When this disciple was gone, **the other disciples** said: “That must be a clever spirit who inspired him to that. And we are glad that he will be gone for several days.

[22] **I** asked the other disciples if they perhaps also would like to visit their wives and children.

[23] **But they said (the other disciples):** “Lord, our wives and children are already excellently provided by You, and therefore we stay here where at each moment we can gain many things for our soul and spirit.”

[24] **I** said: “Then stay, and when someone will come and ask for Me, then teach him and tell him that he should wait until I come back with My friends.”

[25] On this, also the 4 indo-Jews asked Me if they could stay longer in Kis because of Me.

[26] **I** said: “As long as you want. If your heart desires that, then it is good for you to stay here.”

[27] Only then I went outside with My 2 friends, and on a little hill near the Lake of Galilee we spoke about different things on Earth and also in the stars, and also about the inner arrangement of the Earth and of the other stars, about which the 2 friends were greatly delighted.

91. SAMARITANS SEEK THE LORD



AFTER we had spoken with each other on our hill for about 1 hour, a few Samaritans came to the village Kis and took information from several people, asking if they knew where I was.

[2] One of the servants of Kisjona said that I was in this village with My disciples since the evening before and that I was probably staying in the residential house.

[3] The Samaritans were extremely glad and cheerful because of that, for they heard already many things about Me, and also that I traveled through Samaria only a few days ago. But they still were not fortunate to see and speak to Me somewhere. At once they let themselves be guided by the servant to the house, and they had a burning desire to finally see Me, speak to Me and hear Me.

[4] When they entered the big hall, they greeted all those who were present and they right away asked to the first one they could find as to where I was staying and who the great Master was, being in all the fullness of *His* divine might and power.

[5] **Thomas**, to whom it was asked, said: “Friends, at this moment the Lord and Master is not among us physically, but in spirit He is. What do you want Him to do for you?”

[6] **The Samaritans** said: “Friends, we have His teaching, and we strictly live and act according to it, and some of us have found in them already the all life awakening power of this teaching, and they glorify and praise God because He so unmistakably took care of His peoples. And there are many among us who, just like we, would like to see and hear the great Master personally, as long as He is still walking around on this Earth, but they do not have the opportunity and also not the means to travel after Him. That is why they delegated us to seek Him in the name of us all and pass on to Him the gratitude that is due to Him and to give Him the honor that is only due to Him. Therefore, we came here, and we will not leave this village before we have greeted in Himself the Lord and Master of all masters.”

[7] **Thomas** said: “Then be patient for awhile. It will not take long before He will come.”

[8] Then they went and sat at the table, ordered some bread and wine and listened to the conversations that our Raphael had with the 7 temple servants and also with the 4 Indo-Jews, and they were surprised about the great wisdom of the so-called young man.

[9] Gabriel and John spoke however again softly with the disciples. Despite their always moderate lifestyle, the bread and wine was very tasteful to the Samaritans. So they ordered more bread and wine, ate and drank and became very cheerful by that.

[10] And they also saw that following the explanations that he gave about different things to the 7 temple servants and the 4 Indo-Jews, Raphael performed also many miracles like he already had done before in Jerusalem in the presence of Jews and gentiles on the Mount of Olives, although now not to such great extent. And they asked each other who that young man might be, who spoke as wise as a Salomon and who did miracles like a Moses. Some of them thought that he was a relative of Mine, others however thought that he was a very good disciple of Mine. With this divided opinion they were satisfied for the moment.

[11] And Raphael explained to his aforementioned listeners the whole Earth, the moon, the sun, the other planets, then also the comets, the fixed stars with their planets, the nature of the central suns and finally also of the shell globes, its numberless quantities in the endless space of creation, and the nature of the Great Man of Creation, in only a few words that were easy to understand. And he illustrated his explanations with images that he immediately let appear in the area of the hall, which of course largely contributed for the listeners to understand the explanations more easily and faster.

[12] This was however too much for our Samaritans for a person of whom they thought that he was only a very good disciple of Mine, and **one of them** left the table, went to Thomas and asked him: “Friend, forgive me that I take the liberty to ask you about

that young man. Who – what – is he actually, and where does he come from? The words of his mouth are wiser than those of a Salomon, and moreover, he performs miracles like Moses did before in Egypt and in the desert.”

[13] **On this, Thomas said:** “Friend, just be patient until the Lord will come Himself. Then not only will everything become clear to you about these young men, but you will come to know even greater things. And you can imagine that around the Lord all kinds of important heavenly might and powers are gathered and influence us men in a teaching and life-awakening manner, because the Lord is the center of all there is and lives, of all might and power, as well as of all love, truth and wisdom.

[14] If you believe in the Lord, you will also understand that such beings are continuously and always around Him, from time to time visibly – for people who are concentrated on the physical maybe not always visibly, but perceptible anyway – and they obey His will, for they themselves are His always and eternal active will.

[15] Moreover, it is written: ‘In that time you will see the powers of the Heavens coming down to the Earth. These will serve Him and the people who are of good will. The sun, the moon and all the stars will bow down before His glory.’ Yes, friend, if these heavenly beings would not open our eyes for us blind people about the numberless miracles of God’s Heaven, then who else can open our eyes?

[16] Whoever wants to love God, must also know how miraculous He also is in His works. It is true that we men are in the midst of sheer miracles of God, and we ourselves are actually the greatest miracle. If we look at ourselves, how we are born, then we see that we are weak, helpless, speechless and are without any thought. If a child would not be taken care of for a long time, he would be in a much worse condition than even the most pitiful animal. Only after the lovely care of the parents the child becomes a human being.

[17] If you go back to the first man. How could he ever have become intelligent, filled with reason and also other and higher

knowledge if God would not have educated him by higher, heavenly beings and have revealed Himself to him? If God the Lord Himself would not instruct us now in all things, and show us how far we already have drawn away from the truth, the human beings would become so wild that they would be far under *the level of* the animals.

[18] Look at those temple Jews, the Pharisees and scribes. How were they in the time of the first judges, and also still in the time of the first kings, and how are they now? They are blind in all things, dumb and above all full of pride in all possible evilness, and they hate those who bring back the light of the true life from the Heavens, and not one of them believes in the Lord, but he only hates and persecutes Him wherever and no matter how he wants and can do it.

[19] And look, this is certainly already a high degree of an evil degeneration and wildness of men. But now, if the teachers of the people have already reached such a high level of wildness, then from where must the people obtain a higher wisdom if the Lord Himself would not take care of the people and enlighten them now in all things through teaching and signs?

[20] So you can see now this young man explaining the starry sky to the blind people through words and miraculous signs whom he can very easily do in the name of the Lord, so that the dark and evil superstition will disappear from their hearts, and the light of the truth will enlighten them. If you deeply think about this, the nature of that young man will soon become clear to you.”

92. HOW DIFFICULT IT IS TO INSTRUCT THE PEOPLE



WHEN the Samaritan heard what Thomas said, he thanked him for this instruction and walked back to the table of his companions who had their eyes and ears wide open for what our Raphael said and did, and they were greatly amazed about the dark superstition of the people of what they thought about the moon, the sun and the other stars, and how they transmitted their nonsense also to the other people.

[2] And **the one** who was instructed by Thomas said: “O my dear friends, we still stayed with the old teaching of Moses, and on good grounds we have despised the foolishnesses of the temple that became too great, and for that reason we freed ourselves from it entirely, but to the things that this young man is explaining to the guests now in words that are easy to understand, also we up to now have not been less blind than the temple servants in Jerusalem, and so we cannot thank the Lord enough that He permitted us to arrive here at the right moment to attend this truly heavenly teaching.

[3] They say that also Moses has written in the desert an own book in well understandable words, but apparently it became lost already since the Babylonian captivity, and later, when the Greeks and the Romans conquered and destroyed the Babylonian kingdom, those memorable books fell also into the hands of the conquerors. And so, also we possess only some bits and pieces of the old mosaic wisdom.

[4] But still, I have spoken several times with our rabbi about the stars in the sky, and he told me many things about what he acquired through verbal transmission. I insisted several times that he also should speak to the people about these things, but he was of the opinion that the people was still too deeply stuck in superstition, which they acquired before among the Jews, and that more powerful and mightier teachers were needed to wipe out the old superstition with the people. Now we see someone who is a mighty teacher, also in these things, and we understand now also very well what those shining celestial globes in the endless wide

space of creation are and why they were created. When we will come home, we will also tell our neighbors without any fear or shyness about it, and then in this manner the old superstition must be destroyed.”

[5] **On this, someone else said:** “Brother, your intention is simply good, and the people would have a paradisiacal life if they would possess the truth, far away from every superstition, but nothing is more difficult than to wipe out from the mind of man his superstition that he has sucked up since his childhood, by which his fantasy forms with little effort all kinds of fantastically sounding and amusing illusions. That is why it will not be an easy deal for us to accomplish this with our neighbors. So we will only seriously plan something after we will have talked about it with the Lord Himself. He surely will tell us what we should do. For the moment, let us give all our attention to what the wonderful young man says and does, for this is really very exceptional when on his command all kinds of shining little balls appear in the air of the hall and turn and move in all directions.”

[6] **After these clever words, Raphael let it happen that the graphical image of the Earth with the well-recognizable moon would come very near our Samaritans, and they all looked at it with great attention.**

[7] **The chief spokesman said:** “So, this is the true shape of our Earth and that little one, that of the moon. Well, that of the moon is easier to understand than that of the Earth, because if the Earth is inhabited all around – at the bottom as well as at the top – then how can the water stay on the fixed surface of the Earth, and how can the animals and men at the bottom of the Earth stay on it without falling off into the eternal deep space? Besides, the Earth turns around its own axis in about 25 hours by which day and night exist, and also the side above and under are continuously alternating. That is why it is all the more difficult to understand that the water and all the other free bodies are not falling off the Earth.

[8] Friend, you certainly were not wrong when you talked just now

about the difficulty to wipe out the old superstition among the people, for it will still take a lot of struggle before the people will understand that our Earth is and exists as we can see it now before us. And now I very well can see the reason why our old rabbi – although he possessed many hidden knowledge concerning the true shape and the nature of the Earth – did not want to talk to the people about these things, and always said that worthy souls beyond the grave would receive a true light about everything.

[9] But now I would like to hear from that young man myself how the water and all those free bodies at the bottom of the Earth can stay on its fixed surface without falling off.”

93. THE IMPORTANCE OF POSSESSING THE RIGHT KNOWLEDGE ABOUT THE NATURE



WHEN Raphael went with the Pharisees and the 4 Indo-Jews to our Samaritans who were eager to learn, and said: “You very much would like to understand why the water and the free bodies cannot fall off the Earth as you would expect, but remain attached to its fixed surface?

[2] Just consider an apple that hangs on a tree, and just look how often all kinds of insects crawl over the top and the bottom, and how in the morning it is surrounded by many thousands of little dew drops. Who holds all this to the apple in such a way that no little animal or little dew drop falls from it, except when the little animals themselves are flying away from it and the little dew drops vaporize during the day by the warm air?

[3] Or take an apple and strew dust on it. Then the dust, which for your eyes consists of sheer greatly minimized free bodies, are also kept by the apple on top and on the bottom, and do not get off from the apple by themselves. If you want to eat the apple, you first will have to clean it with some difficulty from the dust.

[4] Look, that apple, which is comparatively a bigger and more solid body, possesses a power in itself that attracts the many smaller and lighter bodies, in such a way that they cannot remove

themselves from it, except when they are removed from it by a proportional power from the outside.

[5] But what is an apple as a body compared to the big body of the Earth? Look, that also possesses such a power in itself that can attract the water to itself, and also all the other free bodies, and retain them in such a way that not even a sun particle can remove itself from it. That power increases with the size and the weight of the bodies, and their action reaches much further than the surface of the Earth. So also, the moon is retained by this Earth, in such a way that it would fall on the Earth if it would not be prevented by its central point of gravity that makes it rotate around the Earth.

[6] Understand well what I am explaining to you now about the Earth, for he who really wants to know God, must also know Him in the extremely wise arrangements of His works.

[7] And the one who has only wrong, fundamentally mistaken and untrue opinions and concepts about the arrangements of God's works can impossibly ever receive a clear, correct and true knowledge of God. And he who does not know God according to the truth, can also not really love and honor Him, and do completely His will. Then it becomes dark in his soul, who therefore will cling to matter and he will stick to it, because he lost the inner light of the truth. The lack of knowledge of the true arrangements of God's works has therefore always been the cause of idolatry, of superstition and heathendom, and finally of complete godliness, like it now exists among most of the Jews, Pharisees and among the gentiles.

[8] The poor people is kept on the one hand through force, and on the other hand through deceit in all kinds of blind superstition, and they live and act according to all kinds of false teachings and rules, so that the lazy and completely unbelieving rulers can all the more revel and fatten themselves at their expense.

[9] However, God the Lord will only look at such misbehavior for a certain time, and meanwhile He always proclaims admonitions to the people through seers and prophets who are especially awakened for that. If the people and their leaders will not care

about that, then He will come with His judgment, and He sweeps away the filth from the Earth. And this happens always when the greatest dumbness has united itself completely and almost everywhere with the selfish evilness that violates all neighborly love. For as long as dumbness is the only ruler, it still can easily be changed into light through wise education, although not completely in general – and God is patient with pure dumbness.

[10] But once the first mentioned evilness has put itself at the top of the deepest dumbness, and resists with all pride and violence against the penetration of the eternal light of truth and life, then that is the end of God's patience, and He comes with His judgment – then woe to the apostates!

[11] Thus know God always, according to the full truth, in His works as they are, and in its extremely wise arrangements, then no dumbness, and still less its evilness, will be able to take root in you. So I explain to you now the visible works of God, so that you will possess the full light in every respect. Remember it and keep it faithfully, and let it shine for your mourning brothers and sisters. For when this light will once again decrease among the people, then also the ancient heathendom will rise again, and still worse than ever before. Remember this well, all of you.”

[12] Then they all thanked Raphael for his teaching. He returned to his former place and explained there all kinds of things and appearances in, on and above the Earth.

[13] Also the Samaritans listened with great attention to his teachings, and enjoyed very much that they now could understand and perceive things that before were still as inconceivable to them as the foundation of their own life.

[14] Also Mary listened with great attention to the teachings of Raphael and was extremely impressed by its wisdom. Gabriel and John-Michael explained it to her and the disciples still more deeply and more spiritual than Raphael did and also could do with his listeners, because they were still not enlightened in the things of the spirit.

[15] When Raphael finished his teaching towards noon, I, Kisjona

and Philopold came again into the house, and the 7 Pharisees with their servants, the 4 Indo-Jews and also My disciples expressed their joy and gratitude to Me because I had permitted that they were taught about such great and important things by the 3 angels.

94. THE SAMARITANS ADMIRE THE APPEARANCE OF THE LORD



WHEN the Samaritans heard all this with great attention, sitting at their table, **the chief spokesman** said: “Friends, so this is the Lord Himself, as a visible human being among men. What a glorious stature. What a heavenly-soft fire of love radiates from His eyes, what wisdom radiates from His high forehead, and unto what words must His lovely mouth be capable of.

[2] If you only look at His truly exalted, glorious human stature with the right attention, you cannot doubt for one moment that in such noble human form, as has never existed before, must live a Spirit to which everything is possible, whatever He wants. Who is the one among us who has the courage to approach Him and to speak to Him? I, as a sinful human being, do not have it – and you certainly even less.”

[3] **Another one said:** “Your opinion is completely correct. Even if I would not know that He is the Lord, then His too exalted, noble stature would already fill me with such great awe that my courage would paralyze me and would make my tongue immovable. Therefore, let us stay very calmly at our table and listen quietly to what He will say to someone. Only to Him are all our love, all honor and all praise.

[4] For we only wanted to see Him and, if possible, also hear Him. This is the reason why we came here. By His permission we unmistakably received the mercy we all desired for so fervently. What else can we ask for? Now if we also can hear Him, we will very quietly pay our bill to a servant and will then immediately go on our way back with a happy and grateful heart, for here I really

begin to feel uncomfortable because of the sheer majesty and holiness. I just do not understand how the other people dare to approach Him without any fear and even dare to talk to Him as to any other human being. More than human courage is needed for that. And as far as I can hear, they also talk to Him about very casual things and circumstances of this world.”

[5] **The first one said again:** “Friend, this is really remarkable. What does He care about how the fishes and the lambs will be prepared for the midday meal? And still, that is what they all talk about. Remarkable. That young man just taught to all of us about very important and great things, but now that the Lord Himself is present they all talk about the preparation of the midday meal as if this is now the greatest and most important matter, and the Lord speaks about it with apparent satisfaction to the innkeeper who is well known to us, and his wife and with the other woman who was sitting amongst the disciples before. But yes, it is not necessary to always talk simply and solely about divine exalted things. When they finished ordering the meal, then surely other things and matters will be discussed.”

[6] **When we were ready with the preparation of the quality and also the quantity of the midday meal, Kisjona asked Me what the best way and time was for fishing.**


[7] **We went and sat at the table, ordered in the mean time some bread and wine, and I taught Kisjona when and how at a certain time one or the other kind of fish could be captured and how they should be stored and prepared, so that they can be best digested for the health of the body, and then also be best savored, about which our Kisjona was very glad.**

[8] **But our Samaritans, who sat in a corner of the hall at their own table, were seriously irritated about Kisjona, and one of them said:** “Does this tax collector and innkeeper, who is already so unimaginably rich, not know anything else to talk about than about the easiest and surest way to become even more rich? And the Lord explains it to him very friendly and very extensively. But what can we do about it? What is pleasing to the Lord, may not

bother us. It is still indescribably much better than when He is pleased to inflict to one or the other person all kinds of terrible diseases, which He does not do seldom, about which a true Jew may never complain, but has to bear them with all possible patience and in full dedication to God's will. In short, the Lord is and remains the Lord, and all men are nothing compared to Him.”

[9] All His companions agreed with Him and behaved again very quietly and with great respect in their corner.

95. ABOUT EATING DIFFERENT KINDS OF FLESH AND FRUITS

HEN the Indo-Jews asked Me if a Jew was allowed in case of necessity – as was the case in their country, and if they are well prepared – to eat the flesh of also other, not really unclean animals, which are not mentioned in the book of Moses that they are fit for human consumption.

[2] And I explained it to them and said that in case of necessity the flesh of almost every animal can be eaten, but without blood, and every animal should be prepared in its own manner, as I had extensively described on other occasions.

[3] And Kisjona and the Indo-Jews were very glad that I had in a certain way abolished the old rules of Moses regarding the eating of flesh.

[4] However, this was somehow strange to the 7 Pharisees, and **the scribe** said: “Lord and Master, You certainly are the only One who have the undisputable right to give laws to men and to abolish them also as You please. But still, it is also written that the one who twitches one law, violates the whole law, because one law is the foundation of the other law, and thus also of all laws. How should we understand this?”

[5] **I** said: “If it was not a matter of conscience to you to abolish almost all the rules of Moses and put instead of that your worldly and selfish laws, while you were never Lord and Master who possesses all power in Heaven and on Earth, then how can you ask

Me if the law has not been twitched if I advice and allow you in case of necessity under certain conditions of preparation to eat the flesh of also other animals that Moses did not allow the Jews to eat?

[6] That which comes into man through the mouth by a correct and efficient preparation to alleviate his hunger will never spoil him, but that which comes from the heart out of the mouth, clothed in words or thoughts – like lies, malicious slander, perjury, dirty and obscene language, cursing, gossip, violation of *someone's* honor, temptation to harlotry and adultery, and seductive speeches for all kinds of sins and vices – that is what really spoils the whole man. But that which comes into man by a good and efficient preparation as food for the body, and which also is removed from the body through the natural way, that, as already said, does not spoil man.

[7] But I still did not say that you should do it that way, but only that you can do it in this and that way in case of necessity, and by that I did not abolish any rule of Moses.

[8] Did not David, the man after God's heart, take the show breads that apart from the high priest no one was allowed to eat, and satiated himself with it when he was hungry? Did he abolish Moses by that?

[9] If you want to be My disciples, then let in future not your heart be seized anymore by such senseless thoughts, and finally be completely captured by them.”

[10] When the 7 heard what I said, they realized their blindness, thanked Me for this clarification and did not ask Me such things anymore.

[11] Our Samaritans who also listened to all this with great attention and who were strict followers of the Mosaic teaching, did at first not agree among themselves that I allowed the 4 Indo-Jews to also eat the flesh of other animals, being prepared in such and such way, but when they heard what I replied to the blind question of the 7 temple servants who had changed their clothes, they agreed with Me and praised My wisdom among each other.

[12] **The chief spokesman** said: “Now we have heard from His

mouth what can be done in case of necessity, without committing a sin. What He says to this or that person is also valid for us, similar to the laws of Moses, which are actually not exclusively given to the Israelites but to all men on Earth, and to which every human being should conform himself when he really comes to know them. And now we have heard from His mouth what someone can and may do in case of necessity regarding the nourishment of his body, and we will also conform ourselves to that in case of necessity.

[13] Of course our rabbi's will not be very pleased with that and they will shake their head because they teach that a real orthodox Jew must rather pine away than to satiate himself with an unclean food that is not, according to Moses, blessed by God. But by these words of the Lord, the old nonsense will have to give way for the most pure understanding, which lightens up as a morning sun from these words, and every intelligent Samaritan will therefore praise the love and wisdom of the Lord his life long.

[14] Now if only someone would ask the Lord if in times of need, also the different fruits and herbs and roots that the soil often produces in great quantities, may be eaten when they are prepared in a certain manner, in order to satisfy his hunger with that.”

[15] When the Samaritan had spoken out this wish, Kisjona had the idea to ask Me concerning the different herbs and fruits of the trees and the soil – which kind of these, apart from those that were used until then, could be used to nourish men in case of necessity, and how these had to be prepared.

[16] And I named the herbs, the roots and also the fruits of the trees, and many shrubs and also various beans, and showed them also in clear wordings how all that should be planted, gathered and stored up, and finally how all that should be prepared and can be savored by men, for which they all could not thank Me enough.

96. THE MEAL WITH KISJONA



INCE this explanation and teaching lasted for almost 1 hour, the midday meal had been prepared during that time and was put on the table, and we partook of it cheerfully.

[2] At the same time the same well prepared food was put on the table of the Samaritans, and besides that, also bread and wine in the right measure.

[3] When the Samaritans saw this, they asked the table servants who had ordered this without asking first if they wanted to have a midday meal, of what it had to consist and for what price, for they hardly had enough money to pay for such an excellent meal.

[4] **The servants said:** “We did this by order of our boss, and you can eat the meal without any worries because you also are treated as free guests hospitably.”

[5] Then the Samaritans thanked Me and Kisjona aloud.

[6] And he kindly answered them (**Kisjona**): “Strengthen and satiate yourselves cheerfully my dear guests and friends, and be without any worry.”

[7] Then they thanked Me and Kisjona once again for such great kindness. They ate and drank and were soon in a good and cheerful mood.

[8] Little was spoken during the meal, but when the meal was coming to an end and the Samaritans could not stop admiring the 3 young men at our table, seeing that they considerably ate much more food than we did, **their spokesman** said: “You are all as surprised as I am about the great appetite of the 3 young men at the table of the Lord. However, I have noticed something that probably none of you has attracted your attention as much as I did. Look, what very much attracted my attention was this: I saw that every food that the 3 put to their mouth dissolves and vaporizes already before their mouth, in such a way that not even the smallest crumb came into the mouth of the 3 young men.

[9] I saw this clearly and distinctly, and I suspect that the 3 young men, being very exceptional spiritual beings, are first, by their

inner power, transforming the material food for the body in its spiritual element and only after that absorb it in one or the other manner that suits them, joining it with their being. Because just look, the gnawn off bones of the lambs and calves that are not eaten are before the plates of the other guests, but with those 3 you can see nothing of this, although they put several times big pieces with bones to their mouth, as well of the lambs and the 3 well-fried calves.

[10] What I have noticed here with the 3 proves to me that they are not physical but must be purely spiritual beings, and that they retain their body only for our eyes as long as the Lord permits it for the sake of men and as He wants it. Am I right or not?"

[11] **Another one said:** "Yes, yes, you certainly made a very good observation, and your opinion of this matter is completely correct. And since this is certainly so, it is also clear that this one young man who showed us before the starry sky and our Earth and their outer and inner form and characteristics while he created them from the air together with the stars, is filled with the spiritual power of the Lord and does not need any material food to maintain his immortal body. But if he eats something before our eyes for the sake of appearances then he immediately transforms it in its spiritual element by which he possibly can show himself to us in a material body.

[12] For I myself am already a long time ago of the opinion that all matter in itself is also completely spiritual and becomes visible in all kinds of forms and tangible for our outer sense organs by the wisdom and almightiness of God. And the pure and mighty spirits from God will probably only see matter according to the full inner truth as it is, and not as it appears before our dull sense organs.

[13] Yes, yes we live now in the midst of miracle upon miracle, and still, the blindness of the soul does not want to leave men. Along with the greatest, most living lights from the Heavens, the dark superstition and also the complete unbelief continue to make progress, and the powers of the Heavens are not capable to destroy them. But if there cannot be any light among the people, now that

they can see and taste the highest truths and its miracles close to the primary source, then how dark will it again become among the people if they only will be informed from mouth to mouth about what is happening now before our eyes? Will they firmly believe those pure stories that are handed over while they do not believe now what is and happens before their eyes? It is difficult and hard for me to believe that.

[14] Yes, surely in every time there will be people who will be enlightened by God, who will go around as lights for the other people. But will the many blind ones and worldly scientist pay attention to them? They will call them fools, and if possible they will very quickly persecute them.

[15] O, it will not be easy for the spreaders of this teaching that comes now truly physically to us from the Heavens – even if they would be equipped with the power of these 3 young men. For they will insult them, calling them stressed deceivers, and moreover magicians from the school of the Essenes, and thus also liars, cheaters and agitators of the people, and they will persecute and torture them.

[16] This is my opinion, because the brighter the sunshine of a day, the more painfully darker is often the night that follows in which dark thunderclouds densely cover the starry sky. But all honor to the Lord, because we were worthy to experience this very bright day and walk in it before the eyes of the Lord.”

[17] **They all said:** “Yes, all glory and honor to the Lord only for this, and His love and mercy remains from now on with all people who have a good heart and a good will.”

97. TO FEAR AND TO LOVE GOD



WHEN I stood up from My chair and went to the table of the Samaritans who also quickly stood up from their chairs and said with deep awe to Me (the Samaritans): “O Lord, Lord, we are sinners and are not worthy that You Yourself come to our table, but speak only one word over us, so that we may

become strong in Your light.”

[2] I said: “You can leave out this too great awe for Me, and grow instead of that, into the right and true love for Me, for it means much more and it is greater to love God above all than to fear Him above all. An exaggerated fear for God drives man ever further away from God and is finally the bad seed out of which in due time will grow paganism with the whole pagan service of idols, superstition and finally complete disbelief.

[3] But with full love, man comes ever closer to God, he trusts Him more and more and longs for Him, and thus he is more and more filled with the Spirit of God, because the constantly increasing and trusting love for God is the true and living Spirit of God in man and the spirit of the eternal life in the soul. Therefore, a sinner who repents out of love for God is closer to Him and is more dear to Him than 99 very God-fearing persons who never sinned against a law, and thus, being righteous, never needed to do penance.

[4] Just consider a child who has a great fear for his parents because they may have punished him a few times too severely because of his childish naughtiness. Such a child will indeed obey his parents, but not so much out of love, but rather out of fear for the punishment that he can expect if he would sin again against the will of the parents. The presence of his parents will after some time also be unpleasant to such a child, and he will try to free himself out of the situation that is unpleasant to him by leaving the parental house and search his luck, his rest and his comfort in the faraway foreign regions. And he only will come back in remorse to his parents with fear and trembling if he found the opposite of what he thought to find in the foreign regions.

[5] The same parents have another child who is not so afraid for them, but instead of that, he loves them more and more, does not bother so much about a few admonishments, and will do away with his faults and do their will, thus not out of an ever increasing fear for the severity of his parents, but out of his own ever increasing love for them.

[6] Who of the 2 children do you think will be the most beloved one of the parents?"

[7] **The spokesman** said: "Of course the child who has less fear for his parents, but who instead of that has more love and a childish trust in them."

[8] **I** said: "Your opinion is correct and you have given Me a right answer. So you also should be as a child who has more love than fear for his parents. And so love God as the eternal Father of all men, more than that you fear Him as a relentless judge, then you also will not have so much fear or *feel* shyness for My presence with you as was the case until now.

[9] You can believe Me that God loves also the very fearful children, but what concerns the childish, fearless trust towards Him, there are often very crooked ways *that have to be walked upon*. Without that trust, a soul can never become completely equal to God and be happy and independently free in God, and along those mentioned crooked ways a soul can hardly attain to that. Only great need can bring such children on the right way back to the house of love of his parents.

[10] Since the children only become worse instead of better by the chastisements that come from above, those chastisements happen only seldom, and only when all loving attempts have failed on the blind stubbornness of men. That is why God has always such a great patience with the arrogance of men, so that by constant punishments they would not be driven even more away from Him than what they are already doing themselves.

[11] And once God had to visit men with the chastising rod in His hand, then He presents in His other hand – although somewhat veiled – His heart to them, so that they would see that God the Father, even if He already has the chastising rod in His hand, still comes to meet them with all love, as this is now also the case before your eyes.

[12] But I still add something to this, and all of you remember this well: he who is too fearful in a certain work that he probably will make a mistake by which the work will suffer damage regarding

the goal that has to be reached, will also not seldom make great mistakes. But he who works with pleasure and love, without a too great fear to possibly make a mistake, will make good progress in his work, and probably not many meaningful mistakes will be discovered, because the right love with the right trust is not blind as the pagan worldly wise men think, but it sees much sharper than the sharpest worldly reason with its too fearful conscious.

[13] Although love has made a mistake here and there, then it quickly and easily can correct it by itself, but when the reason with its fear has made a mistake, then it loses all trust in itself and often does not find any means by which the mistake can be completely corrected.

[14] By that I do not want to tell you that a man should put his reason and his conscience completely aside – far from it. But he who let himself be completely mastered by the reason and an exaggerated fearful fright to make mistakes, and to straightly doubt in the much better work of love and its trust, is certainly blind and foolish to a high degree.

[15] If you have well understood this now, you will also easily be able to bear My presence, and then you will not want to have the wish in yourself to leave this place as fast as possible out of sheer fear and shyness for Me.”

[16] After My friendly lesson the Samaritans changed completely. They thanked Me for this teaching and became very trusting.

[17] And **the chief spokesman** said: “O Lord and Master of all things and all life. Only a great love for You has brought us here, because we heard that here or in Nazareth reliable information could be received about where You were staying, and so we traveled to this place with great confidence. Well now, instead of the information that we expected, namely where You are staying, we have met You directly, to our great surprise, and this surprise filled us with a very great fear for Your endless glory. But now You have changed our certainly not unreasonable and also not unjustified fear at once into a trusting love. And therefore we will stay here as long as You will stay here, and we will

follow You – if You want – wherever You will go, for we also would gladly like to be Your disciples and spreaders of Your living word.”

[18] **I** said: “That is also why I wanted you to search for Me, for I know you very well and also your spirit. But now, continue to eat and drink. After that we will go on with our discussion.”

[19] They all were satisfied with that, and they now continued to eat and drink without any shyness, and I returned to My place.

98. GABRIEL’S TESTIMONY ABOUT MARY



WHEN I sat again on My place amongst My disciples, they praised the Samaritans and their zeal.

[2] Also **Mary**, who was like Joseph a strict Jew, and had a great esteem for the temple – although in My time not as much as before – was surprised about the old faithful Jewish attitude and about the strong faith of the Samaritans, and she finally said: “If these would guard and lead the temple – which is unfortunately not so – the old ark would again be filled with the Spirit of the Lord for the salvation of Jerusalem and for all the Jews, and the angels would nourish the virgins in the temple with heavenly food, as this still happened about 30 years ago with the pious Simeon and the gray Anna who had to take care of the virgins of the temple. But since the time that the pious Zachariah was strangled by the envy of the Pharisees when he came to sanctify the offerings to God with prayer and fragrance, the old ark went to ruin and the Spirit of the Lord disappeared. It is true that a new ark was constructed but the Spirit of the Lord will never return in there again, but it is rather the spirit of lie, deceit, envy, jealousy and slander, pride and malicious lust for power that lives there.

[3] But with the Samaritans over whom many thousands of the most terrible curses were sent by the temple, lives the Spirit of the Lord, as this became clear now, and it will not leave them as long as they will stay the way they are now. Even I myself was not

pleased with them before because they separated themselves from the temple, but from now on I want to count them as my friends, and their Garizim¹ stands high above the temple of Salomon.”

[4] **They all praised the words of Mary, and a Samaritan came to us and said:** ‘Listen, friends of the Lord, who is this lovely woman who has prophesied now with a highly spiritual sense?’

[5] **And Gabriel, who sat next to Mary, said:** “This is the woman of whom it is written: ‘Look, a virgin will give birth to a Son. His name will be Emmanuel, and in Him, God will truly be with us.’

[6] Now look at the Lord in our midst. He is Emmanuel, thus the one and only true God with us. And now you also know who this woman is. Go and tell it also to your friends.”

[7] **Then the Samaritan bowed, went to his companions and told them. And they all stood up, came to us and greeted Mary with a speech that was full of solemn² words.**

[8] **But Mary said to him:** “I was and am only a chosen virgin of the Lord, and what I became, was His will. So do not praise me, but give always only the honor to God. Do whatever will say the Son of the Most High, who is one with Him.”

[9] **Then they greeted Mary once more and thanked Me and Kisjona for the good midday meal. Only after their words of thanks they asked Me what they should do now.**

[10] **I said:** “You can still rest now for a short time, as we will do. After that you will hear what you can do till the evening.”

[11] **Then they went to their table again and discussed with each other about some passages from the prophets in which it was stated about the woman who would give birth to a Son for whose name and might every knee will bow.**

[12] **After having rested at our table for a while, I stood up and said:** “It is not nice for man to spend a day without activity. Therefore, we also will change our rest until the evening in real activity.

¹ Garizim: a mountain on which the Samaritans built a temple.

² Literally: ‘anointing words’.

[13] Look, the fish tanks of our friend Kisjona became almost empty now, and that is why we will go fishing and will fill all his tanks with fishes. We all will participate in this work.”

99. THE RICH FISHING



ISJONA thought that this was a good idea, because he really had already a shortage, especially of noble fishes.

[2] But a few of his present **servants and helpers** said: “Today in the daytime the fishing will not be so successful, because firstly most of the fishing barks and boats that can still be used have sailed out somewhere in the lake already 3 days ago for fishing. They took almost all the equipments along with them which are necessary for fishing, and they did not come back yet, which is understandable since in this time it is always bad for fishing, and secondly the lake is now too wild, and then the fishes go to the deep and avoid the shallow places along the shore. From where do we have to obtain now the suitable boats with which we can dare to go out on the wildly waving water?”

[3] **I** said: “Do what I say, and we will not have undertaken an unsuccessful work.”

[4] Then everybody stood up, also the Samaritans, and we went outside to the nearby shore of the lake.

[5] When we came to the shore that was hit by big waves, **Kisjona**, and also **Philopold** said to Me: “Lord and Master, My helpers made in natural respect a very true remark. Without good ships and without suitable strong nets not much can be accomplished in a natural way. For You, o Lord, of course nothing is impossible, but we people can only accomplish something with great difficulty when the opportunity and the circumstances for it are favorable and present.”

[6] **I** said: “Exactly under these circumstances that are most unfavorable for fishing I took you outside to show you the power of living faith. Take the old nets that are hanging there to the fences along the shore, and climb into the 2 old boats that are here

at the shore, throw the nets into the water and have faith, then we will receive in a short time a big quantity of the best of fishes.”

[7] The old boats were however for half filled with water and the helpers and also My disciples scooped out the water that had come in, and filled up some leaks with cloths to make the boats useable in case of need. And the Samaritans hastily repaired the damaged nets as good as possible, and in this manner in case of need a fishing tool was made. And some of the helpers brought a necessary number of containers to lay in the fish that was caught, so that they could be brought to the big tank.

[8] When everything was made ready so far, a few of My disciples with the helpers stepped into the rather large boats, pushed them a little away from the shore and let the net that was spread out sink into the water between the 2 boats, and after a few moments it was already so much filled with the most noble fishes that the helpers were frightened, for they could not bring the net to the shore because of the heavy weight, and they cried for help. Then the Samaritans stepped into the water that was barely ½ man’s height deep on the place where the boats were, and they helped the disciples and the helpers to bring the fishes to the shore. About 100 people were busy for more than 1 hour before all the fishes were brought into the containers that were intended for that.

[9] When the fishes were brought to their spot, I said to Kisjona, who just like Philopold could not stop being surprised about this extremely rich catch: “If you want to fill this old net once more with all kinds of fishes that live in the water of the lake, then let the net sink into the water just like this first time, because now it is the best time for fishing. For when the sun comes close to the horizon, the fishes will come in this time and in the water of this lake closer to the shores.”

[10] **Kisjona** said: “O Lord and Master, with this one catch I am already more than satisfied, but if You want it and, with Your mercy, if the work will not be too heavy for the men, the net can be spread out once more.”

[11] **The helpers, the disciples** and also **the Samaritans** said to

Kisjona: “O dear friend, not only one time, but still several times we will lay the net into water if it is all right with the Lord and with you, for with this kind of gain the work is certainly well worth the trouble.”

[12] **I said:** “Well then, do once more what you have done before, but when you made the catch this time, you should sort out the different kinds in such a way that you separate the predatory fishes – which you will catch this time also in the net – from the noble fishes, and then put them into a separate container, because the predatory fishes are harmful to the noble fishes, as the wolves are harmful to the sheep.”

[13] **Kisjona said:** “Lord, I thank You for this advice. Until now my helpers and fishermen have sorted out the fishes and said: ‘What lives together in the lake, can also live together in the container.’ But I noticed already several times that the predatory fishes and the softer noble fishes have difficulty to bear each other, but my men did not want to admit that. But now that they have heard it from Your mouth, they will do it the more clever way in the future, to their and my advantage.”

[14] **Everyone said:** “Yes, what the Lord says we will also do, for only He is familiar with and knows everything into details.”

[15] **Then the disciples and the helpers climbed once again in the 2 boats and threw just like before the net into the water. Within a few moments it was again overly full, but now with different kinds of fishes, so that our Samaritans went again into the water and had to help the fishermen to bring the overly full net to the shore.**

[16] **When the net was brought again to the shore, they took out the fishes and sorted them, of which the greatest part consisted now of predatory fishes, and a big container was filled with them. And also the different kinds of noble fishes were sorted and every kind was put into a separate container.**

[17] **Then the net was taken out again of the water and hanged to the fence to let it dry, and the 2 boats were attached to the shore. While we were fishing, the sun had reached the horizon, and Kisjona thought that we could go into the house now because at**

this time of autumn it often became quite cold at the water because of the heavy blowing winds after sunset.

[18] **I** said: “Friend, do not worry about that, because like everything, also the warmth and the coldness lie in My hand. We will wait here for the return of your ships and see what kind of gain they will bring you.”

[19] **Kisjona** said: “Lord and Master, I do not expect too much from that, because the day before the Sabbath they left in the direction of Jesaira. They probably will have worked little there. Yesterday it was Sabbath, thus a full day of rest. Today it is the day after the Sabbath, also a day on which not much work is done. So a miracle must have happened if my 14 ships will bring any gain. Besides, I do not see any ship that I know coming from any direction to this shore.”

[20] **I** said: “Friend, although you think very logically, but your thinking is from time to time still stronger than your faith. Look there, where the 3 angels were during the time that we were fishing, in the company of the woman who gave birth to My body. Look, they became invisible when the sun had set completely, and they helped your ships to be filled with all kinds of good fish. And before you have looked back 7 times, your 14 ships will become visible. Every ship will bring 100 fishes.”

[21] After I had said that to Kisjona, the ships became visible in the first twilight, and it took only ½ hour before the ships were at the shore.

[22] **The chief skipper** came immediately out of his ship, greeted us and was extremely glad when he also saw Me in the group, for he knew Me from before, and said: “Yes, now everything is clear to me. When we searched the bays after Jesaira the day before yesterday, because there is always the most of fish, we did not find even 1 fish, because a hard south wind drove them to the deep. In short, we worked until late at night with torches, but it all was completely in vain. Yesterday it was Sabbath, then we were not allowed to work, today we were at work from already very early in the morning and we fished about 9 hours without interruption, but

also without any result. When I saw that all our work and efforts were in vain I gave the signal to sail back home again.

[23] But when we made ourselves ready on the signal that I gave to sail home, 3 fine young men appeared at the shore. They wanted me to allow them to come on my ship. I also accepted them without the least of objection. When I asked them to where they wanted to sail, they said: ‘We did not come to sail with you somewhere on this lake, but to help you with fishing, for you have fished for almost 2 days long and did not have any catch. Let therefore your nets sink once more into the water, then you will have a good catch.’ We did that, the work went very easy, and within a few moments our nets were filled with all kinds of the most beautiful fishes.

[24] But how did we have to put so many fishes in such a short time into the containers? The 3 young men helped us, and before we knew it, all the fishes were put into the containers. After that, the 3 disappeared suddenly, and a hard wind came to our ships that blew us in this direction.

[25] When I saw this shore that I know well, and could already distinguish that there were quite a few people present, I said to my skippers: ‘The great Savior from Nazareth must be in Kis, because the 3 young men who provided us with the fishes in such a miraculous way, were unmistakably 3 mighty spirits who are always ready to serve Him. The great Savior and Master loves our lord and has performed a sign on his ships by His servable spirits to his advantage.’

[26] Now when I went ashore, I quickly saw that my assumption was true. And now I thank You, o great Son of God and Master of all masters, for the invaluable good deed that You have shown to us. To You we give the honor, and all the honor to God in the highest of all heights.

[27] But now we have to take care of the fishes, now that there is still some light.”

[28] **I said: “You can do that. Put them into the tank, everyone according to their kind. Do not put the several predatory fishes**

among the noble fishes, but put them into the tank that is prepared for them. Then you can go to rest.”

[29] When the servants had lifted the containers with the fishes out of the ships, Kisjona looked at them, and he was extremely surprised about the number and the noble kind of fishes of which there was not 1 that weighed less than 5 pounds.

[30] On this I said: “Let us now go back home, since we have spent also this day in a good way for the benefit and the well being of men. And you, friend Kisjona, let a simple evening meal be prepared for us.”

[31] Then we went immediately into the house, and much was discussed about the events of the day.

100. THE LORD INDICATES HOW HIS TEACHING SHOULD BE PROCLAIMED



SPOKE with the 4 Indo-Jews about many things, and gave them indications how they should tell to their fellow countrymen about what they had seen and heard, so that it would bear fruit for the attainment of the eternal life of the soul. Then I lay on the hands on the 2 men and gave them, through the laying on of hands in My name, the power to heal the sick and free those who are possessed by evil spirits. The 4 thanked Me with all their heart for this mercy and praised My goodness.

[2] Also the 7 temple servants asked Me if I also would like to give them this mercy so that could bring more easily the men in the land of Ham with My help to the knowledge of the one, only true God and to the faith in Me and My word.

[3] I said: “For you there is still time, but these 4 are leaving already tomorrow very early in the morning and that is why I give them already tonight the power to heal the sick. Besides, they are already longer with Me than you and they are instructed in everything so that they know now precisely what they have to do, and their souls are pure and without sin, and the power that is given to them will stay in them. Your souls however, are still

afflicted with many weaknesses of which you firstly have to get rid of by true self-denial, because the power that I would give you would not stay in you, because in order that My mercy would stay in a vessel it must be lasting, strong, good and pure. However, you soon will attain to that when it is the right time in you and for you.”

[4] The 7 were satisfied with that and thanked Me for this lesson and promise. Then they went to their places and took some bread and wine. Now also the Samaritans came to Me and asked Me if it would be advisable, in this time of extreme superstition, to proclaim to their brothers, besides the gospel for soul and spirit, also the gospel that they heard from the young man and which they had well understood, about the things and appearances in the great world of nature, and give them a correct light about all the foolishnesses in which men from time to time became more and more entangled, which was namely caused by the selfish and greedy priests who succeeded to bring the blind people away from every truth by all kinds of newly imagined deceitful arts and by empty fantasy words and teachings.

[5] I said: “My dear friends, when you will start to teach and to form the people in My name, then say first: ‘The true peace be with you, for the Kingdom of God has come near to you.’

[6] Then teach them out of which the Kingdom of God consists and what man should do to attain to the Kingdom of God already on this Earth and still more in the beyond. This you all know very well because firstly I Myself and then also several disciples who were sent out by Me have already proclaimed My teaching in clear words to you.

[7] After you have purified and cleansed the hearts and souls of men in this manner, then you also can explain to them the things in the natural world to bring their reason back into the state of the initial truth and to cleanse their mind of all superstition. This is all the more necessary because a person who has wrong understandings about the works that are created by God can also never really come to know God, and thus also not himself and also

not his fellowman.

[8] And wherever this knowledge will lack, also the desired true love for God will lack, and also the love for fellowman. Because if someone does not love his fellowman whom he can see as a being like himself, then how will he love God whom he cannot see with the eyes of his body?

[9] Man can only see God with the eyes of his spirit – only through the pure and true way of understanding in the created things and in His loving and wise order in this – and will then also love Him above all. And he who will love God above all, will know from this love also himself and his fellowman, and will love and respect God's likeness in his fellowman as in himself.

[10] But it is a correct and true assumption of you that one should carefully work towards it, so that finally all superstition will disappear with the people, for as long as there is still a little spark of imagined belief that will burden the human mind, man will not be free, and through this little spark he can fall into many big errors. That is why only the complete pure truth can make man completely free and thus also here and in the beyond completely happy and blissful.

[11] The Kingdom of God that has come into this world in Me, is the most pure and most perfect truth, as I am also the Way, the Truth and the Life Myself, of which I certainly have given you already more than enough proof everywhere, and which is known and also firmly believed now already by many thousands of people, Jews and gentiles from all world regions.

[12] However, remember well that it is always easier to tell a person something about one or the other matter regarding his knowledge than to move his mind towards a firm, undoubting faith. That is why you also should strive much more to establish a living faith than to *strife for* sheer knowledge, for in knowledge alone there is no life, but rather in the pure and living faith through the works of love.

[13] Knowledge, no matter how pure, is a reflection of things and their order in this world, which is, as it is now, perishable, just like

all the things in, on and above it, but the things of the faith are a true light from the Heavens. They are lively belonging to the mind, the soul and his spirit, are immortal and imperishable.

[14] I say to you all: this sky that is visible to you, consisting of the moon, the sun and all the stars, will once perish, but My words and the one who believes them will not perish, but will exist eternally.

[15] With this I do not want to say that for the sake of the living faith with the people you have to exclude what is called pure science, because man can only believe something when he has heard or known about it. Once man has received a pure, trustworthy and true information and well-tested knowledge about a good and true matter, then he should not be satisfied with the pure knowledge, but absorb it in his living faith and act according to its basic principles. If he will do that, the pure science will produce for him also true, living and imperishable fruits. That is why you, who are now listening very carefully to My words, will also only completely understand that these are God's words if you will entirely live and act according to it.

[16] I know the Samaritans well, and their various good qualities are not unknown to me, but among them there are also many misunderstandings to which they often hold on more persistently than the gentiles hold on to theirs. That is why you also will have to go through many hard struggles for the sake of My name and My teaching. Because the worldly reason of men does not understand the inner things of the spirit and of the living truth and considers those who tell them about it as fools, and they persecute them also wherever they can. But you should not care about that and teach the truth as it is laid into your heart and mouth by Me, then you finally will gather many good fruits for My Kingdom, and your reward will later in My Kingdom not be little.

[17] Do not listen to the threats and dark words of your rabbi's who greatly boast about their hidden wisdom that contains little truth, but hold on to what you have heard from Me, then you will turn many rabbi's towards Me.

[18] But if you will let yourselves be intimidated by them, you will, with the best of will, accomplish very little which is good and relevant. With this, I have told you now everything what you should do in My name to spread My Kingdom also among you in a most blessed way.

[19] Soon you will hear many things from the world. The Shepherd will be killed and the sheep will be scattered from fear. Then do not take offence at Me. Be not discouraged and unstable in your faith, for even when I will leave this world physically, then I still will stay with My followers¹ in the spirit till the end of the world, and I will always faithfully reveal Myself to those who love Me and keep My commandments.

[20] I will not leave you behind as orphans in this world, but where only 2 or 3 will come together in My name, there I will be in their midst, and what you then in My name will ask the Father – who is in Me as I am in Him – will also be given to you.

[21] Therefore, let not your mind become sad and fearful when you will hear that I, the Lord Himself, have let Myself be humiliated by the world and have gone over, out of this world into My Heaven by means of the most narrow and most thorny way. For look, all this must happen like this, so that the measure of the evil world will become full, and the judgment that is predicted to it, will come over it.

[22] I am saying this now to you beforehand, so that you, when you will hear about it, will not be confused about that or will even take offence at Me. For if you really want to be My disciples and spreaders of My Kingdom on Earth, you also must become firm in everything and never be unstable.”

¹ Literally: ‘with those who are Mine’.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

THE LORD IN NAHIM

1.	THE RESURRECTION OF THE DEAD YOUNG MAN IN NAHIM	2
2.	THE DIFFERENCE OF OPINION ABOUT THE PERSONALITY OF THE LORD	5
3.	WHY NEED AND SICKNESS ARE PERMITTED	8
4.	WHY THE LORD VISITS THE WIDOW	11
5.	THE CONDITION FOR A PERSONAL REVELATION FROM GOD ..	14
6.	THE CONCERN OF THE YOUNG MAN	17
7.	JAMES ASKS FOR THE SPIRITUAL MEANING OF THE AWAKENING OF THE DEAD YOUNG MAN	20
8.	ABOUT THE SPIRITUAL CIRCUMSTANCES OF OUR TIME	22
9.	THE QUESTION OF THE DISCIPLES ABOUT THE DARKENING OF THE PURE TEACHING OF CHRIST	25
10.	THE TESTIMONY OF THE WIDOW AND HER ARISEN SON BEFORE THE PEOPLE	28
11.	THE SIGNS OF THE SPIRITUAL PRESENCE OF THE LORD	31
12.	THE RIGHT WAY TO WORSHIP THE LORD	34

THE LORD TRAVELS THROUGH SAMARIA

13.	THE CARAVAN OF THE ROBBERS	37
14.	THE CONFESSION OF THE ROBBERS	39
15.	THE TRANSFORMATION OF THE DESERT	42
16.	THE LORD BLESSES THE DESERT	44
17.	TAKING THE FERTILE COLONY INTO POSSESSION	46
18.	THE LORD WITH HIS FOLLOWERS IN AN INN IN SAMARIA	49
19.	THE INNKEEPER ASKS FOR THE LORD	52
20.	THE MIRACLE WITH THE NOBLE FISHES	56
21.	THE INNKEEPER RECOGNIZES THE LORD	59
22.	THE SPIRITUAL MEANING OF THE EVENTS IN THE INN	63
23.	THE SPLENDOR ON THE TABLE DURING THE MORNING MEAL ..	65
24.	THE PROPHET SCHOOL	70
25.	THE TRUE PROPHETS	73
26.	FOLLOWING THE LORD	75
27.	THE FRUITFUL BLESSING IN A SMALL VILLAGE IN SAMARIA ..	77
28.	THE REASON WHY THE INHABITANTS ARE B LESSED	81
29.	THE COMPLETE HEALING OF THE POSSESSED PERSON	84

30.	THE PROMISE AND THE BLESSING OF THE LORD FOR THE INHABITANTS OF THE MOUNTAIN VILLAGE	87
31.	THE LORD WITH HIS FOLLOWERS IN AN ANCIENT VILLAGE ...	90

THE LORD IN GALILEE

32.	IN THE INN IN THE COUNTRYSIDE	94
33.	THE LORD MAKES HIMSELF KNOWN TO THE INNKEEPER	97
34.	THE HEALING OF THE 10 LEPERS	101
35.	SOME PHARISEES AND SCRIBES TEMPT THE LORD	105
36.	THE LORD HEALS THE SICK HELPER OF THE INNKEEPER	110
37.	THE VALUE OF THE TEMPLE RULES	113
38.	THE 2 ND COMING OF THE LORD	116
39.	THE END TIME BEFORE THE 2 ND COMING OF THE LORD	119
40.	THE KINGDOM OF GOD	122
41.	EXPLANATION OF THE LORD ABOUT 'EATING HIS FLESH AND DRINKING HIS BLOOD'	125
42.	THE MEANING OF ACTING ACCORDING TO GOD'S WORD	127
43.	THE NIGHTLY STORM	130
44.	THE YOUNGEST PHARISEE RECOGNIZES THE LORD	134
45.	IN THE DAMAGED SYNAGOGUE	137
46.	THE SPIRITUAL DARKNESS OF THE SCRIBE	140
47.	THE DREAM OF THE SCRIBE	143
48.	THE PHARISEE EXPLAINS THE DREAM	145
49.	THE 2 TEMPLE SERVANTS SEARCH FOR THE LORD	147
50.	THE WINE MIRACLE AND ITS RESULTS	150
51.	ABOUT THE TREE OF LIFE AND THE TREE OF KNOWLEDGE ...	152
52.	ADAM, WHERE ARE YOU? – AN IMPORTANT QUESTION	154
53.	THE LORD SPEAKS ABOUT HIS INCARNATION	156
54.	THE TRUE FEAR OF GOD	158
55.	PRACTICING FAITH AND TRUST	160
56.	THE RESULT OF UNCEASING PRAYING. THE PARABLE OF THE OPPRESSED WIDOW AND THE HARD JUDGE.	162
57.	THE CONDITION OF FAITH IN THE FUTURE	165
58.	THE NEW TIME	168
59.	THE GRADUAL CLEANSING OF SCIENCES AND TECHNOLOGIES	170
60.	THE WISDOM OF MOSES AND JOSHUA	172
61.	THE SCIENCE OF CORRESPONDENCES	175
62.	THE RETURN OF THE LORD	177

63.	THE MIDDAY MEAL	180
64.	THE DEPARTURE TO KANA	183

THE LORD IN KANA

65.	IN THE INN AT KANA	186
66.	THE INNKEEPER AND JUDAS ISCARIOT	188
67.	THE LORD ABOUT JUDAS ISCARIOT	193
68.	TAKING THE RIGHT WAY TO THE RIGHT GOAL. THE WRONG AND CORRECT WAY OF THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE REASON.	195
69.	THE CAUSE OF THE NEED ON EARTH	198
70.	THE TASK OF THE HUMAN SOUL ON EARTH	201
71.	THE WAY MANKIND HAS TO GO TO REACH THE GOAL	203
72.	THE TRAVELERS BEFORE THE INN	205
73.	THE INDO-JEWS REPORT ABOUT THE GOAL OF THEIR TRIP ...	208
74.	THE DREAM OF THE LITTLE GIRL	212
75.	THE GIRL RECOGNIZES THE LORD	216
76.	THE POWER OF THE SPIRIT	219
77.	THE TRUE SANCTIFICATION OF THE SABBATH	224
78.	THE GROUP FROM PERSIA IN THE INN	229
79.	THE LORD HEALS THE SICK TRADE LEADER OF THE BUSINESSMEN	231
80.	THE LORD'S ASSIGNMENT TO THE PERSIANS	235
81.	THE LORD LEAVES KANA	238

THE LORD IN KIS AT THE LAKE OF GALILEE

82.	THE LORD MEETS PHILOPOLD	240
83.	THE COUNTRY OF THE INDO-JEWS	244
84.	THE JOYFUL MEAL WITH KISJONA	246
85.	TEMPLE SERVANTS FROM JERUSALEM IN SEARCH OF THE LORD	250
86.	CONVERSATION BETWEEN THE TEMPLE SERVANTS AND THE LORD	256
87.	THE LORD CALLS THE 3 ARCHANGELS MICHAEL, GABRIEL AND RAPHAEL	261
88.	THE OPINION OF THE TEMPLE SERVANTS ABOUT THE 3 ARCHANGELS	265
89.	THE LORD EXPLAINS THE 13 TH CHAPTER OF EZEKIEL	269
90.	THE TEMPLE SERVANTS RECEIVE GREEK CLOTHING	276

91.	SAMARITANS SEEK THE LORD	279
92.	HOW DIFFICULT IT IS TO INSTRUCT THE PEOPLE	283
93.	THE IMPORTANCE OF POSSESSING THE RIGHT KNOWLEDGE ABOUT THE NATURE	285
94.	THE SAMARITANS ADMIRE THE APPEARANCE OF THE LORD	288
95.	ABOUT EATING DIFFERENT KINDS OF FLESH AND FRUITS	290
96.	THE MEAL WITH KISJONA	293
97.	TO FEAR AND TO LOVE GOD	295
98.	GABRIEL'S TESTIMONY ABOUT MARY	299
99.	THE RICH FISHING	301
100.	THE LORD INDICATES HOW HIS TEACHING SHOULD BE PROCLAIMED	306
